# COMSPHERE 3800*PLUS* MODEMS

## USER'S GUIDE

**Document No. 3980-A2-GB30-20**

November 1996

PARADYNE™

# COMSPHERE
# 3800*Plus* Modems
## User's Guide

3980-A2-GB30-20

3rd Edition (November 1996)

Changes and enhancements to the product and to the information herein will be documented and issued as a new release to this manual.

For the 3810*Plus* and 3820*Plus* standalone modems the Universal Service Order Code (USOC) for Permissive mode is RJ11C. The Canadian equivalent to the USOC is CA11. For the 3811*Plus* carrier-mounted modem the USOC for Permissive mode is RJ21X. The Canadian equivalent to the USOC is CA21A.

### Warranty, Sales, and Service Information

Contact your sales or service representative directly for any help needed. For additional information concerning warranty, sales, service, repair, installation, documentation, or training, use one of the following methods:

- **Via the Internet:** Visit the Paradyne World Wide Web site at http://www.paradyne.com
- **Via Telephone:** Call our automated call system to receive current information via fax or to speak with a company representative.
  - — Within the U.S.A., call 1-800-870-2221
  - — International, call 813-530-2340

### Trademarks

All products and services mentioned herein are the trademarks, service marks, registered trademarks or registered service marks of their respective owners.

Printed on recycled paper

**COPYRIGHT © 1996 Paradyne Corporation. All rights reserved.**

*This publication is protected by federal copyright law. No part of this publication may be copied or distributed, transmitted, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, or translated into any human or computer language in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, magnetic, manual or otherwise, or disclosed to third parties without the express written permission of Paradyne Corporation, 8545 126th Avenue North, P.O. Box 2826, Largo, Florida 33779-2826.*

*Paradyne Corporation makes no representation or warranties with respect to the contents hereof and specifically disclaims any implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for a particular purpose. Further, Paradyne Corporation reserves the right to revise this publication and to make changes from time to time in the contents hereof without obligation of Paradyne Corporation to notify any person of such revision or changes.*

# Important Safety Instructions

1. Read and follow all warning notices and instructions marked on the product or included in the manual.
2. Slots and openings in the cabinet are provided for ventilation. To ensure reliable operation of the product and to protect it from overheating, these slots and openings must not be blocked or covered.
3. Do not allow anything to rest on the power cord and do not locate the product where persons will walk on the power cord.
4. Do not attempt to service this product yourself, as opening or removing covers may expose you to dangerous high voltage points or other risks. Refer all servicing to qualified service personnel.
5. General purpose cables are provided with this product. Special cables, which may be required by the regulatory inspection authority for the installation site, are the responsibility of the customer.
6. When installed in the final configuration, the product must comply with the applicable Safety Standards and regulatory requirements of the country in which it is installed. If necessary, consult with the appropriate regulatory agencies and inspection authorities to ensure compliance.
7. Input power to this product must be provided by one of the following: (1) a UL Listed, CSA Certified power source with a Class 2 or Limited Power Source (LPS) output for use in North America, or (2) a certified power source with a Safety Extra Low Voltage (SELV) output for use in the country of installation.

In addition, if the equipment is to be used with telecommunications circuits, take the following precautions:

– Never install telephone wiring during a lightning storm.
– Never install telephone jacks in wet locations unless the jack is specifically designed for wet locations.
– Never touch uninsulated telephone wires or terminals unless the telephone line has been disconnected at the network interface.
– Use caution when installing or modifying telephone lines.
– Avoid using a telephone (other than a cordless type) during an electrical storm. There may be a remote risk of electric shock from lightning.
– Do not use the telephone to report a gas leak in the vicinity of the leak.

# Notices

**WARNING**

**THIS EQUIPMENT HAS BEEN TESTED AND FOUND TO COMPLY WITH THE LIMITS FOR A CLASS A DIGITAL DEVICE, PURSUANT TO PART 15 OF THE FCC RULES. THESE LIMITS ARE DESIGNED TO PROVIDE REASONABLE PROTECTION AGAINST HARMFUL INTERFERENCE WHEN THE EQUIPMENT IS OPERATED IN A COMMERCIAL ENVIRONMENT. THIS EQUIPMENT GENERATES, USES, AND CAN RADIATE RADIO FREQUENCY ENERGY AND, IF NOT INSTALLED AND USED IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE INSTRUCTION MANUAL, MAY CAUSE HARMFUL INTERFERENCE TO RADIO COMMUNICATIONS. OPERATION OF THIS EQUIPMENT IN A RESIDENTIAL AREA IS LIKELY TO CAUSE HARMFUL INTERFERENCE IN WHICH CASE THE USER WILL BE REQUIRED TO CORRECT THE INTERFERENCE AT HIS OWN EXPENSE.**

**THE AUTHORITY TO OPERATE THIS EQUIPMENT IS CONDITIONED BY THE REQUIREMENTS THAT NO MODIFICATIONS WILL BE MADE TO THE EQUIPMENT UNLESS THE CHANGES OR MODIFICATIONS ARE EXPRESSLY APPROVED BY PARADYNE.**

**WARNING**

**TO USERS OF DIGITAL APPARATUS IN CANADA:**

**THIS CLASS A DIGITAL APPARATUS MEETS ALL REQUIREMENTS OF THE CANADIAN INTERFERENCE-CAUSING EQUIPMENT REGULATIONS.**

**CET APPAREIL NUMÉRIQUE DE LA CLASSE A RESPECTE TOUTES LES EXIGENCES DU RÈGLEMENT SUR LE MATÉRIEL BROUILLEUR DU CANADA.**

# Government Requirements and Equipment Return

Certain governments require that instructions pertaining to modem connection to the public switched telephone network be included in the installation and operation manual. Specific instructions are listed in the following sections.

Note that 3810*Plus*, 3811*Plus*, and 3820*Plus* are the model names for the model numbers 3980, 3981, and 3982, respectively. The modems collectively are called 3800*Plus* modems.

## United States

### Notice to Users of the Public Switched Telephone Network

1. This equipment complies with Part 68 of the FCC rules. On the equipment is a label that contains, among other information, the FCC registration number and ringer equivalence number (REN) for this equipment. The label is located on the bottom of the Model 3810*Plus* and 3820*Plus* modems and on the circuit card assembly of the Model 3811*Plus*. If requested, this information must be provided to the telephone company.

2. Page A of this manual contains the Universal Service Order Codes (USOC) associated with the services on which the equipment is to be connected.

3. The Ringer Equivalence (REN) is used to determine the quantity of devices which may be connected to the telephone line. Excessive RENs on the telephone line may result in the devices not ringing in response to an incoming call. In most, but not all areas, the sum of the RENs should not exceed five (5.0). To be certain of the number of devices that may be connected to the line, as determined by the total RENs, contact the telephone company to determine the maximum RENs for the calling area.

4. If the 3800*Plus* modem causes harm to the telephone network, the telephone company will notify you in advance that temporary discontinuance of service may be required. But if advance notice is not practical, the telephone company will notify the customer as soon as possible. Also, you will be advised of your right to file a complaint with the FCC if you believe it is necessary.

5. The telephone company may make changes in its facilities, equipment, operations, or procedures that could affect the operation of the equipment. If this happens, the telephone company will provide advance notice in order for you to make the necessary modifications in order to maintain uninterrupted service.

6. If you experience trouble with this equipment, please contact your sales or service representative (as appropriate) for repair or warranty information. If the product needs to be returned to the company service center for repair, contact them directly for return instructions using one of the following methods:

   - **Via the Internet:** Visit the Paradyne World Wide Web site at http://www.paradyne.com
   - **Via Telephone:** Call our automated call system to receive current information via fax or to speak with a company representative.
     - — Within the U.S.A., call 1-800-870-2221
     - — International, call 813-530-2340

   If the trouble is causing harm to the telephone network, the telephone company may request that you remove the equipment from the network until the problem is resolved.

7. The user is not authorized to repair or modify the equipment.

8. This equipment cannot be used on public coin service provided by the telephone company. Connection to Party Line Service is subject to state tariffs. (Contact the state public utility commission, public service commission or corporation commission for information.)

9. The Telephone Consumer Protection Act of 1991 makes it unlawful for any person to use a computer or other electronic device to send any message via a telephone fax machine unless such a message clearly contains, in a margin at the top or bottom of each transmitted page, or on the first page of the transmission, the date and time it is sent, and an identification of the business, or other entity, or other individual sending the message, and the telephone number of such business, or other entity, or individual.

   In order to program this information, follow the steps outlined in the manual supplied with your fax software.

10. An FCC compliant telephone cord with modular plugs may be provided with this equipment. This equipment is designed to be connected to the telephone network or premises wiring using a compatible modular jack which is Part 68 compliant.

## Canada

### Notice to Users of the Canadian Public Switched Telephone Network

The Canadian Department of Communications label identifies certified equipment. This certification means that the equipment meets certain telecommunications network protective, operational and safety requirements. The Department does not guarantee the equipment will operate to the user's satisfaction.

Before installing this equipment, users should ensure that it is permissible to be connected to the facilities of the local telecommunications company. The equipment must also be installed using an acceptable method of connection. In some cases, the company's inside wiring associated with a single line individual service may be extended by means of a certified connector assembly (telephone extension cord). The customer should be aware that compliance with the above conditions may not prevent degradation of service in some situations.

Repairs to certified equipment should be made by an authorized Canadian maintenance facility designated by the supplier. Any repairs or alterations made by the user to this equipment, or equipment malfunctions, may give the telecommunications company cause to request the user to disconnect the equipment.

Users should ensure for their own protection that the electrical ground connections of the power utility, telephone line and internal metallic water pipe system, if present, are connected together. This precaution may be particularly important in rural areas.

**CAUTION**

**Users should not attempt to make such connections themselves, but should contact the appropriate electric inspection authority, or electrician, as appropriate.**

The Load Number for this equipment is on the label on the modem. The Load Number (LN) assigned to each terminal device denotes the percentage of the total load to be connected to a telephone loop which is used by the device to prevent overloading. The termination on a loop may consist of any combination of devices subject only to the requirement that the total of the Load Numbers of all devices does not exceed 100.

If your equipment is in need of repair, refer to the procedure in the *Government Requirements and Equipment Return* section.

# Table of Contents


## Preface

Objectives and Reader Assumptions . . . . . vii
How to Use This Manual . . . . . vii
Related Documents . . . . . vii

## 1. Introduction

Overview . . . . . 1-1
Features . . . . . 1-1
Options . . . . . 1-2
COMSPHERE Models . . . . . 1-2

## 2. 3810*Plus* and 3820*Plus* Installation

Overview . . . . . 2-1
3810*Plus* and 3820*Plus* Modem Package . . . . . 2-1
3810*Plus* and 3820*Plus* Modem Installation . . . . . 2-2
DTE Connection . . . . . 2-3
Dial-Line Connection . . . . . 2-4
3810*Plus* 4-Wire/2-Wire Leased-Line Network Connection . . . . . 2-4
3820*Plus* 2-Wire Leased-Line Network Connection . . . . . 2-5
AC Power Supply Connection . . . . . 2-5
Network Management System Connection . . . . . 2-5
Modem Power-Up . . . . . 2-6
Removing and Replacing 3810*Plus* and 3820*Plus* Modems . . . . . 2-6

## 3. 3811*Plus* Installation

Overview . . . . . 3-1
3811*Plus* Modem Package . . . . . 3-1
3811*Plus* Modem Installation . . . . . 3-2
Removing and Replacing 3811*Plus* Modems . . . . . 3-4

## 4. Front Panel Operation

Overview . . . . . 4-1
Diagnostic Control Panels . . . . . 4-1
Status Indicators . . . . . 4-2
DCP Operation . . . . . 4-4
Menu Structure . . . . . 4-6
Selecting Factory Configuration Options . . . . . 4-11

## 5. Call Setup Branch

Overview . . . . . 5-1
Call Setup Branch . . . . . 5-2

## 6. Status Branch

Overview . . . . . 6-1
Status Branch . . . . . 6-1

## 7. Test Branch

Overview . . . . . 7-1
Test Branch . . . . . 7-2

## 8. Configure Branch

Overview . . . . . 8-1
Configure Branch . . . . . 8-4
Configuration Tables . . . . . 8-7
Security Configuration Options . . . . . 8-42

## 9. Control Branch

Overview . . . . . 9-1
Control Branch . . . . . 9-1
Automatic Firmware Download . . . . . 9-6

## 10. Remote Branch

Overview . . . . . 10-1
Remote Branch . . . . . 10-1

## 11. Security

Overview . . . . . 11-1
Security Branch . . . . . 11-4
Security Password Entry Techniques . . . . . 11-11
Database Table Examples . . . . . 11-12

## 12. Fax Operation

Overview . . . . . 12-1
Fax Operation . . . . . 12-1

## 13. AT Command Set and S-Registers

Overview . . . . . 13-1
Operating Modes . . . . . 13-1
Command Guidelines . . . . . 13-2
AT Command List . . . . . 13-2
S-Register List . . . . . 13-14

## Appendices

A. Menu Tree . . . . . A-1
B. Result Codes . . . . . B-1
C. Troubleshooting . . . . . C-1
D. Technical Specifications . . . . . D-1
E. Pin Assignments . . . . . E-1
F. CCITT V.25bis Dialing Commands and Responses . . . . . F-1
G. Default Configuration Options . . . . . G-1
H. Equipment List . . . . . H-1

## Glossary

## Index

# List of Figures


| Figure | | Page |
|---|---|---|
| 2-1 | 3810*Plus* and 3820*Plus* Modem | 2-2 |
| 2-2 | 3810*Plus* Rear Panel | 2-3 |
| 2-3 | 3820*Plus* Rear Panel | 2-4 |
| 2-4 | 3600 Hubbing Device | 2-5 |
| 3-1 | 3811*Plus* Modem | 3-2 |
| 3-2 | Installing a 3811*Plus* Modem | 3-3 |
| 4-1 | 3810*Plus* and 3820*Plus* DCP | 4-1 |
| 4-2 | Optional SDCP, 3811*Plus* Faceplate, and Optional SDU | 4-2 |
| 4-3 | 3800*Plus* LCD and Keypad | 4-4 |
| 5-1 | Dial Backup | 5-3 |
| 7-1 | Local Analog Loopback | 7-3 |
| 7-2 | Remote Digital Loopback | 7-4 |
| 7-3 | Local Digital Loopback | 7-5 |
| 7-4 | Pattern Test and Local Analog Loopback Test | 7-6 |
| 7-5 | Pattern Test and Remote Digital Loopback Test | 7-6 |
| 7-6 | End-to-End Pattern Test | 7-6 |
| 8-1 | DCP Configuration Process | 8-2 |
| 8-2 | AT Command Configuration Process | 8-3 |
| E-1 | VF Pin Orientation | E-3 |
| E-2 | Wiring Diagram — 8-Position to 6-Position Crossover Cable | E-4 |

# List of Tables


| Table | | Page |
|---|---|---|
| 4-1 | 3800*Plus* DCP LEDs | 4-3 |
| 4-2 | SDCP LEDs | 4-4 |
| 4-3 | Top Level Menu Status | 4-7 |
| 4-4 | Common Operational Messages | 4-10 |
| 4-5 | Dial Access Security Messages | 4-10 |
| 5-1 | Valid Dial Command Modifier | 5-6 |
| 8-1 | DTE Interface Configuration Options | 8-7 |
| 8-2 | DTE Dialer Configuration Options | 8-14 |
| 8-3 | Line Dialer Configuration Options | 8-19 |
| 8-4 | Dial Line Configuration Options | 8-23 |
| 8-5 | Leased Line Configuration Options | 8-27 |
| 8-6 | V.42/MNP/Buffer Configuration Options | 8-31 |
| 8-7 | Test Configuration Options | 8-37 |
| 8-8 | Miscellaneous Configuration Options | 8-39 |
| 8-9 | Security Configuration Options | 8-42 |
| 11-1 | Edit Password Table Group Options | 11-7 |
| 11-2 | Set Answer Security Group Options | 11-8 |
| 11-3 | Set Originate Security Group Options | 11-9 |
| 11-4 | Security Database Table Using VF-Side Passwords | 11-12 |
| 11-5 | Security Database Table Using DTE-Side Password | 11-13 |
| 11-6 | Security Database Table Using Both VF-Side and DTE-Side Password | 11-13 |
| 11-7 | Security Database Table Using Paired VF-Side and DTE-Side Passwords | 11-14 |
| 13-1 | 3800*Plus* AT Commands | 13-3 |
| 13-2 | 3800*Plus* S-Registers | 13-14 |
| B-1 | Result Codes | B-1 |
| C-1 | Modem Integrity | C-1 |
| C-2 | Modem – DTE Connection | C-2 |
| C-3 | Modem – VF Connection | C-2 |
| C-4 | Online Operation | C-4 |
| C-5 | Leased-Line Operation | C-4 |
| C-6 | Dial Backup Operation | C-4 |
| D-1 | Technical Specifications for COMSPHERE 3800*Plus* Modems | D-1 |
| E-1 | EIA-232-D Pin Assignments | E-2 |
| E-2 | VF Connector Pin Assignments | E-3 |
| F-1 | V.25bis Commands | F-4 |
| F-2 | V.25bis Response Messages | F-5 |
| G-1 | Factory Default Configuration Options | G-1 |

# Preface

## Objectives and Reader Assumptions

This manual describes how to install and operate the 3810*Plus*, 3820*Plus* (standalone), and 3811*Plus* (carrier-mounted) modems. The reader is assumed to have a basic understanding of modems and their operation.

## How to Use This Manual

Chapter 1 provides information about the features of 3800*Plus* modems.

Chapters 2 provides instructions for installing 3810*Plus* and 3820*Plus* modems.

Chapters 3 provides instructions for installing 3811*Plus* modems.

Chapter 4 provides the information required to operate the Model 3810*Plus* and 3820*Plus* using the front panel and the Model 3811*Plus* using the COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier's shared diagnostic control panel (SDCP).

Chapters 5 through 11 describe the seven branches of the front panel command sets: Call Setup, Status, Test, Configure, Control, Remote, and Security.

Chapter 12 provides general information about operating 3800*Plus* modems in fax mode.

Chapter 13 provides instructions for displaying and changing AT commands and S-Registers.

Appendix A provides a menu tree for 3800*Plus* modems.

Appendix B provides a list and description of result codes issued by 3800*Plus* modems.

Appendix C provides instructions for performing diagnostic tests when data communications problems occur.

Appendix D provides technical specifications for 3800*Plus* modems.

Appendix E provides EIA RS-232 and VF TELCO pin assignments, and auxiliary cable diagrams.

Appendix F provides V.25bis dialing information.

Appendix G provides a list of all default configuration options available for the four non-cellular factory preset configurations: Async Dial, Sync Dial, Sync Leased, and UNIX® Dial.

Appendix H is an equipment list for 3800*Plus* modems, including optional features and cables.

The Glossary provides a description of terms used throughout this manual.

The removable Quick Reference contains key information from throughout the manual.

## Related Documents

| | |
|---|---|
| 3000-A2-GA31 | *COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier, Installation Manual* |
| 3610-A2-GZ45 | *3600 Hubbing Device, Feature Number 3600-F3-300, Installation Instructions* |
| 6700-A2-GY31 | *COMSPHERE 6700 Series Network Management System User's Guide* |

Call your service representative to order additional product documentation.

# Introduction 1

Overview . . . . . 1-1
Features . . . . . 1-1
Options . . . . . 1-2
COMSPHERE Models . . . . . 1-2

## Overview

The COMSPHERE® 3810*Plus*, 3820*Plus*, and 3811*Plus* modems, extensions of the award-winning COMSPHERE 3800 Series, are a new generation of full-feature, high-speed dial modems that offer reliable asynchronous and synchronous operation over dial- or leased-lines networks. The 3800*Plus* modems' software defineability allows for the addition of future enhancements and features.

Through their downloading capability, 3800*Plus* modems can be upgraded to the latest firmware, requiring no new hardware investment or on-site personnel, and little or no downtime. These modems support a wide range of modulation schemes and offer control using either AT commands, the user-friendly diagnostic control panel (DCP) or the optional COMSPHERE 6700 Series Network Management System (NMS). The NMS performs extensive monitoring, testing, reporting, and restoral functions to assist in managing your network.

High-speed data transfer and reliable throughput at line rates as high as 33,600 bps over dial lines is achieved by employing the latest techniques in CCITT V.42bis/MNP Class 5 data compression and CCITT V.42/MNP error correction. The modems can send data to the DTE at speeds as high as 115,200 bps.

The 3800*Plus* modem is extremely versatile when used in modem pooling environments; it allows multiple users to temporarily customize modem settings, thereby permitting communication with the calling modem. Upon disconnection, the 3800*Plus* modem falls back to its original configuration settings and resumes normal operation.

The modem's compatibility with a number of dialing methods and protocols, such as asynchronous AT commands, CCITT V.25bis dialing, and the user-friendly diagnostic control panel (DCP), permits the 3800*Plus* modem to be used in a variety of applications and environments while also allowing control over modem configuration, dialing, and diagnostics. The 3800*Plus* modems offer preset factory configurations containing the most often used modem settings. These factory presets provide quick configuration for any asynchronous or synchronous dial, synchronous leased, UNIX® hardware-based dial, or cellular environments.

The 3810*Plus* is a 4-wire/2-wire standalone modem; the 3820*Plus* is a 2-wire standalone modem; the 3811*Plus* is a carrier-mounted version of the 3810*Plus*.

## Features

The 3800*Plus* modems have a wide variety of features.

- Dial-Line Modulations: Proprietary extensions of V.34 (33,600 and 31,200 bps), ITU-T V.34 (up to 28,800 bps), V.34*terbo* (19,200 and 16,800 bps), CCITT V.32bis (up to 14,400 bps), V.32 (up to 9600 bps), V.22bis (2400 bps), V.22 (1200 bps), V.21 (300 bps), Bell 212A (1200 bps), and Bell 103J (300 bps).
- Four-wire Leased-Line Modulations: Proprietary extensions of V.34 (33,600, 31,200, 28,800, 26,400, 24,000, 21,600, 19,200, 16,800, 14,400, 12,000, 9600, 7200, 4800, and 2400 bps), V.32*terbo* (19,200 and 16,800 bps), V.32bis (14,400, 12,000, 9600, 7200, and 4800 bps), V.32 (9600 and 4800 bps), and V.22bis (2400 bps).
- Two-wire Leased-Line Modulations: Proprietary extensions of V.34 (33,600 and 31,200 bps), ITU-T V.34 (up to 28,800), V.32*terbo* (19,200 and 16,800 bps), V.32bis (14,400, 12,000, 9600, 7200, and 4800 bps), V.32 (9600 and 4800 bps), and V.22bis (2400 bps).

- Class 1 and Class 2 Group III Fax modulations: CCITT V.17 (14,400, 12,000, 9600, and 7200 bps), V.29 (9600 and 7200 bps), and V.27ter (4800 and 2400 bps).
- Convenient migration to new or optional features through software downloading.
- CCITT V.42bis and MNP Class 5 data compression.
- Virtual error free data integrity with CCITT V.42 and MNP Level 4 error control.
- Automatic and manual single call dial backup and dial standby capabilities for 2-wire and 4-wire leased-line applications.
- A unique Paradyne modem pooling feature that preserves the answering modem's permanent configuration, but allows multiple users to temporarily adapt parameters for individual requirements.
- Dial-line data rates from 300 bps–33,600 bps. Leased-line rates from 2400 bps–33,600 bps.
- Asynchronous dial DTE data rates from 300 bps–115,200 bps.
- A diagnostic control panel (DCP) that displays the connect status, data rate, type of error control or compression, test results, alarm status of DTE or VF parameters for both local and remote modems.
- Storage of up to 10 telephone numbers to directory locations.
- Compatibility with the industry *de facto* standard AT Command set.
- Dialing via DCP, AT commands, DTR, or CCITT V.25bis commands.
- Configuration of software options via the AT Command set or DCP.
- High-speed transmission using asynchronous, synchronous, or UNIX devices over full- or half-duplex dial networks or 2-wire/4-wire leased lines.
- Complement of self-tests, local and remote loopbacks including CCITT compatible V.54.
- Seven factory-defined configurations and two user-defined configuration areas.
- Originate Security and three Answer Security modes which guard against unwanted user access to the host DTE.
- Directory #1 Callback capability.

# Options

3800*Plus* modems also may have the following optional features:

- Leased-Line Modulations: CCITT V.33 (14,400 and 12,000 bps) and CCITT V.29 (9600, 7200, and 4800 bps).
- Extended Security, permitting up to 3,000 passwords (3811*Plus* only).

# COMSPHERE Models

The COMSPHERE high-speed modem is available in several models.

- The 3810*Plus*, a 4-wire/2-wire standalone unit capable of operation on 2-wire dial, or 4-wire leased or 2-wire leased lines.
- The 3820*Plus*, a 2-wire standalone unit capable of operation on 2-wire dial or 2-wire leased lines.
- The 3811*Plus*, a 4-wire/2-wire carrier-mounted modem for installation into a COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier; it is capable of operation on dial, or 4-wire leased or 2-wire leased lines.

# 3810*Plus* and 3820*Plus* Installation 2


Overview . . . . . 2-1
3810*Plus* and 3820*Plus* Modem Package . . . . . 2-1
Customer-Supplied Equipment . . . . . 2-2
3810*Plus* and 3820*Plus* Modem Installation . . . . . 2-2
Connecting 3810*Plus* and 3820*Plus* Modems with Supplied Cables . . . . . 2-3
DTE Connection . . . . . 2-3
Dial-Line Connection . . . . . 2-4
3810*Plus* 4-Wire/2-Wire Leased-Line Network Connection . . . . . 2-4
3820*Plus* 2-Wire Leased-Line Network Connection . . . . . 2-5
AC Power Supply Connection . . . . . 2-5
Network Management System Connection . . . . . 2-5
Modem Power-Up . . . . . 2-6
Removing and Replacing 3810*Plus* and 3820*Plus* Modems . . . . . 2-6


## Overview

The standalone 3810*Plus* modem (Figure 2-1) is capable of either dial or 4-wire/2-wire leased-line operation; the standalone 3820*Plus* modem (Figure 2-1) is capable of either dial or 2-wire leased-line operation. Either modem is controlled using AT commands or the diagnostic control panel (DCP). The DCP consists of an LCD which displays selections, three function keys and four directional keys which allow you to maneuver and choose DCP selections, and a row of 13 LED status indicators which display modem activity. For a better understanding of DCP operation, refer to Chapter 3, *Front Panel Operation.*

The rear of the 3810*Plus* modem contains an ON/Off power switch, a low voltage power connector, an 8-pin modular jack for leased-line connection, an 8-pin modular jack for dial-line connection, a 4-pin modular jack for network management, and a DB-25-S DTE connector. The 3820*Plus* has a single 8-pin modular jack which is used for leased-line or dial-line connection.

## 3810*Plus* and 3820*Plus* Modem Package

After opening the modem's package, check for damage and verify that the following items are present:

- 3810*Plus* or 3820*Plus* modem
- Power supply
- One 6-position modular cord
- One 8-position modular cord
- User's Guide

If any hardware components are damaged, notify your service representative. Return equipment using procedures described in the *Government Requirements and Equipment Return* section near the beginning of this book.

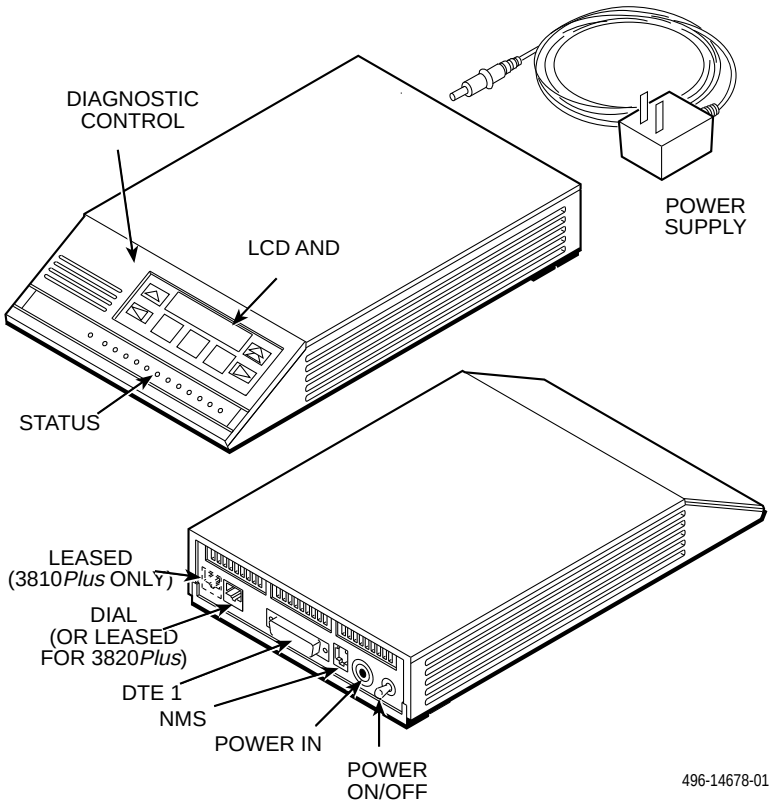



**Figure 2-1. 3810*Plus* and 3820*Plus* Modem**

### Customer-Supplied Equipment

The following customer-supplied equipment may be required to complete a data communications system using the 3810*Plus* or 3820*Plus* modem:

- A DTE with an available RS-232D serial port.
- A standard RS-232D cable with a male DB-25-S connector at one end to attach to the modem.
- One of the following modular dial or leased network interfaces:
  - — RJ11C for dial permissive applications
  - — JM8 for leased-line applications
- A JM8 to RJ11 crossover cable for 2-wire leased-line applications (3820*Plus* only)

If you are installing a 3810*Plus* or 3820*Plus* modem, continue reading the next section. If you are installing a 3811*Plus* modem, skip to *3811Plus Modem Installation*, later in this chapter.

## 3810*Plus* and 3820*Plus* Modem Installation

Before installing your standalone modem, make sure your installation site is clean and well-ventilated. Allow space around the modem for installing cables and telephone line cords, and make sure the modem is located within reach of the ac power outlet. The distance between your modem and DTE should be minimized if DTE data rates exceed 19,200 bps. Also, low capacitance cables may be necessary for speeds greater than 19,200 bps or distances greater than 50 feet.

The rear panel of a 3810*Plus* or 3820*Plus* modem has the following switches and connectors (see Figures 2-2 and 2-3):

- An ON/Off power switch.
- An 8-pin DIN type power receptacle for the table-top power supply.

- An 8-pin modular keyed jack for 4-wire/2-wire leased lines (3810*Plus* only).
- An 6-pin modular keyed jack for dial (PSTN) lines (and, for 3820*Plus* only, 2-wire leased lines).
- A 4-pin modular jack for network management system (NMS) connection.
- A 25-pin DB-25-S receptacle for DTE interface.

### Connecting 3810*Plus* and 3820*Plus* Modems with Supplied Cables

Figures 2-2 and 2-3 show how 3810*Plus* and 3820*Plus* modems are connected to certain TELCO jack types using the supplied cables. For other TELCO connections, refer to Appendix D.

## DTE Connection

Use the following procedure to connect the RS-232D cable from the modem to the DTE:

1. Make sure the modem's rear panel power switch is Off.
2. Connect the DB-25-P (male) connector on the cable to the DB-25-S (female) connector labeled DTE 1 (Figure 2-2 or Figure 2-3) on the modem's rear panel. Use a small screwdriver to tighten the cable to the modem.
3. Connect the DB-25-P connector on the cable to the DB-25-S connector on the DTE. Use a small screwdriver to tighten the cable to the DTE.

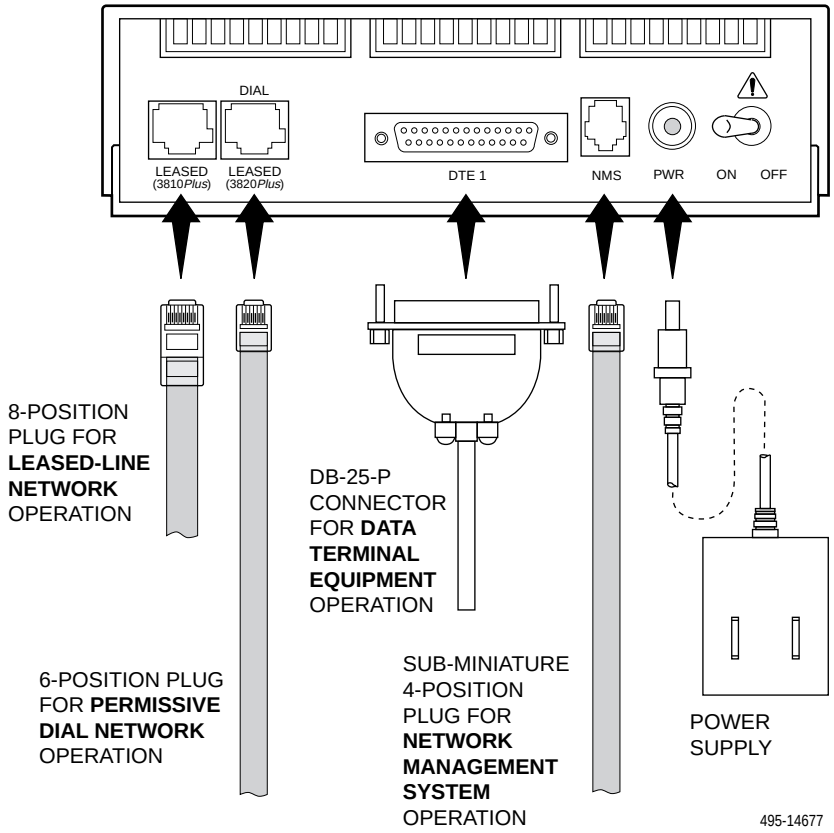



**Figure 2-2. 3810*Plus* Rear Panel**

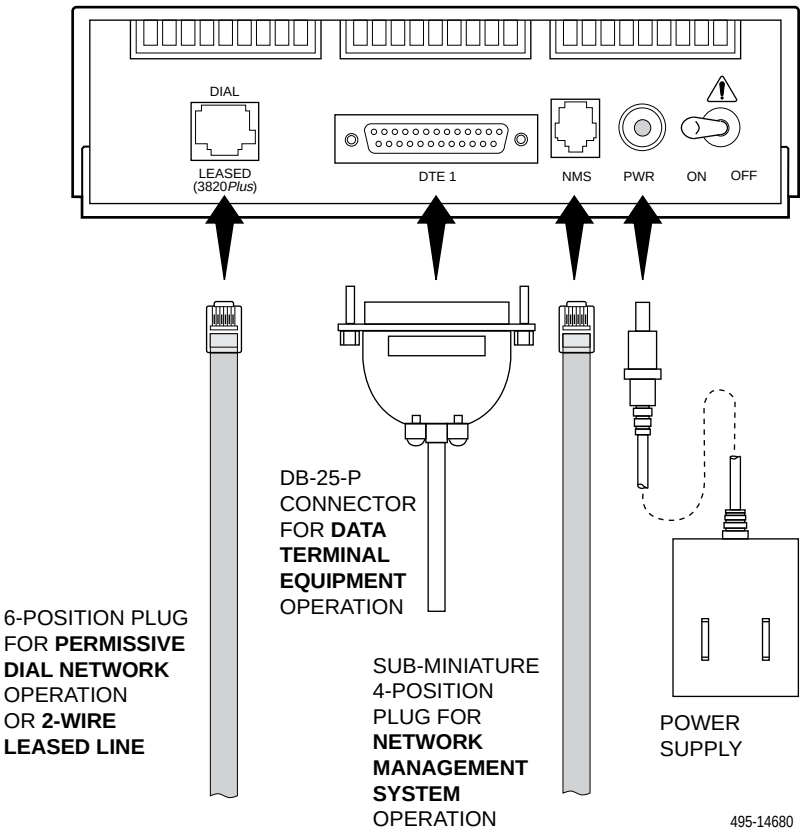



**Figure 2-3. 3820*Plus* Rear Panel**

# Dial-Line Connection

Use the following procedure to connect the 3810*Plus* or 3820*Plus* modem to the dial network interface:

1. Insert the 6-position, 4-conductor modular plug into the jack labeled DIAL/LEASED (Figure 2-3).

2. Insert the other end of the modular cord into the dial network interface (“demarc”).

# 3810*Plus* 4-Wire/2-Wire Leased-Line Network Connection

Use the following procedure to connect a 3810*Plus* modem to the leased-line network interface:

1. Insert the 8-position, 8-conductor modular plug into the jack labeled LEASED (3810*Plus*) (Figure 2-2).

2. Insert the other end of the modular cord into the leased-line network interface (“demarc”).

3. If you intend to use dial backup, follow steps listed in *3810Plus Dial-Line Connection* section.

# 3820*Plus* 2-Wire Leased-Line Network Connection

Obtain a JM8 to RJ11 (8-position to 6-position) crossover modular cable. See the equipment list in Appendix H for part number information, and Appendix E for a wiring diagram.

Use the following procedure to connect a 3820*Plus* modem to the leased-line network interface:

1. Insert the 6-position, 6-conductor modular plug into the jack labeled DIAL/LEASED (3820*Plus*) (Figure 2-3).

2. Insert the other end of the modular cord into the leased-line network interface (“demarc”).

# AC Power Supply Connection

**WARNING**

**Power supplies from other modems may fit into the POWER connector, but connecting the wrong power supply can cause damage to the modem or the power supply.**

Use the following procedure to connect the modem to an ac power outlet:

1. Make sure the modem’s power switch is in the Off position.

2. Insert the power transformer’s cylindrical connector into the modem’s rear panel power receptacle (Figure 2-2 or Figure 2-3).

3. Connect the power supply to a grounded ac power outlet.

# Network Management System Connection

For the 3810*Plus* or 3820*Plus* modem, use the following procedure to connect the modem to the network management system interface:

1. Insert the subminiature 4-position, 4-conductor modular plug of the 3600 Hubbing Device (Figure 2-4) into the jack labeled NMS (Figure 2-2 or 2-3).

2. Connect the 3600 Hubbing Device to the network management system.

Refer to the *3600 Hubbing Device, Feature Number 3600-F3-300, Installation Instructions* for more information. Installation for the 3810*Plus* or 3820*Plus* modem is the same as for the 3610 DSU.

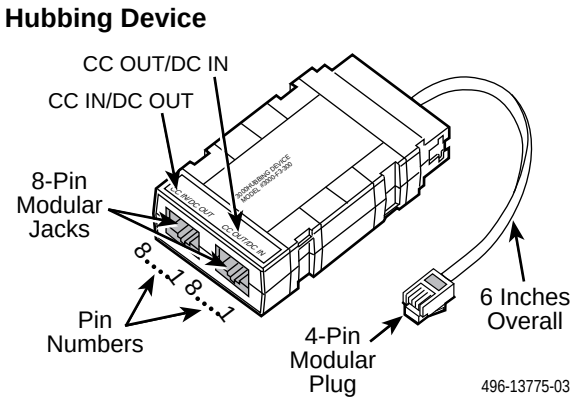
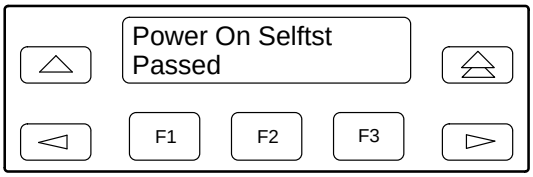



**Figure 2-4. 3600 Hubbing Device**

## Modem Power-Up

Once your modem is properly connected to the DTE, dial and/or leased lines, and ac outlet, press the modem's rear panel power switch to the ON position. The modem begins a power-up self-test. This test takes several seconds to perform, and verifies the operation of most hardware components within the modem. If successful, the LCD displays **Power On Selftst Passed** and continues to the Top-Level menu screen.




If a failure occurs during the self-test, the LCD may display **Power On Selftst Failed** for several seconds. The LCD then may display the Top-Level menu screen with the message **Power on Fail** appearing on the top line of the LCD. Although a failure has occurred, the modem may attempt to operate. If it does, you can activate a more thorough self-test using the Test branch. Refer to Chapter 6, *Test Branch*.

If you are not installing a 3811*Plus* modem, continue reading at *Selecting Factory Configuration Options*, later in this chapter.

## Removing and Replacing 3810*Plus* and 3820*Plus* Modems

To remove and replace a 3810*Plus* or 3820*Plus* modem, perform the following steps:

1. Make sure the modem is offline, and toggle the modem's rear panel power switch to the Off position.

2. Disconnect the power cord from the ac power outlet, and then from the connector on the rear of the modem.

3. Disconnect the dial and leased-line modular cords from the modem's rear panel.

4. Disconnect the DTE interface cable from the modem's rear panel.

   If the modem is to be removed for service, return it to the company using the procedures described in *Government Requirements and Equipment Return* near the beginning of this book.

5. Install the replacement modem as described in the *3810Plus and 3820Plus Modem Installation* section of this chapter, and configure it the same way as the modem being replaced.

# 3811*Plus* Installation 3

Overview . . . . . 3-1
3811*Plus* Modem Package . . . . . 3-1
Customer-Supplied Equipment . . . . . 3-1
3811*Plus* Modem Installation . . . . . 3-2
Removing and Replacing 3811*Plus* Modems . . . . . 3-4

## Overview

The carrier-mounted 3811*Plus* modem (Figure 3-1) is capable of dial or 4-wire/2-wire leased-line operation and resides in a COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier. The faceplate of the 3811*Plus* has 16 LED status indicators for displaying modem activity and an audio speaker jack for the carrier's optional speaker.

The 3811*Plus* modem's backplate has two DTE edge card connectors that mount into a connector plate located on the rear of the carrier. This connector plate has two DB-25-S connectors. One provides an RS-232D DTE interface, and the other is unused. The 3811*Plus* derives ac power from the COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier's backplane, which is a common bus to all devices installed in the carrier. The user interface with any 3811*Plus* is the shared diagnostic control panel (SDCP), an optional feature similar to the DCPs on the 3810*Plus* and 3820*Plus*. For a better understanding of DCP operation, refer to Chapter 4, *Front Panel Operation.*

The COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier has a total of 17 slots. The first slot, Slot 0, is reserved for the shared diagnostic unit (SDU) while the remaining 16 slots can house up to 16 3811*Plus* modems, or for mixed networks, a combination of 3811*Plus* modems and other Paradyne access products, such as Model 3611 data service units. An SDU is a circuit card that provides SDCP and network management interfaces to access products installed in the carrier. SDUs are only required if a single SDCP is used by multiple COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carriers in a cabinet, or if a network management system (NMS) is used.

For more details on the COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier, refer to the *COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier, Installation Manual*.

## 3811*Plus* Modem Package

After opening the modem's package, check for damage and verify that the following items are present:

- 3811*Plus* modem
- Rear connector plate with DB-25-P edge card connector

A copy of this User's Guide is supplied with each 3000 Series Carrier.

If any hardware components are damaged, notify your service representative. Return equipment using procedures described in the *Government Requirements and Equipment Return* section near the beginning of this book.

### Customer-Supplied Equipment

The following customer-supplied equipment may be required for the installation of a 3811*Plus* modem:

- A COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier.
- A Shared Diagnostic Unit (SDU, required for network management applications and multiple carriers).
- Two 50-pin mass termination cables, one Network Interface Module (NIM) for modems installed in Slots 1–8, and one NIM for modems installed in Slots 9–16 (required for dial-line applications).
- One of the following dial or leased network interfaces:
  - 50-pin to modular cable (RJ11C) for dial permissive applications

— 50-pin to modular cable (JM8) for leased line applications

- One 6-position to 6-position modular cord (required for network management applications).
- A Shared Diagnostic Control Panel (SDCP).

If the modem is to be managed by a network management system, an SDU must be supplied and properly connected to the network management controller. For proper network management connection to the SDU, refer to the appropriate network management system user's guide.

For installation of the 3000 Series Carrier into a cabinet, refer to the *COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier, Installation Manual*.

# 3811*Plus* Modem Installation

The 3811*Plus* modem is designed for installation in a COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier which supplies operating power and the dial and/or leased-line network connections. **For correct power, DTE, dial-line, leased-line, NIM, and network management cabling information, refer to the *COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier, Installation Manual.***

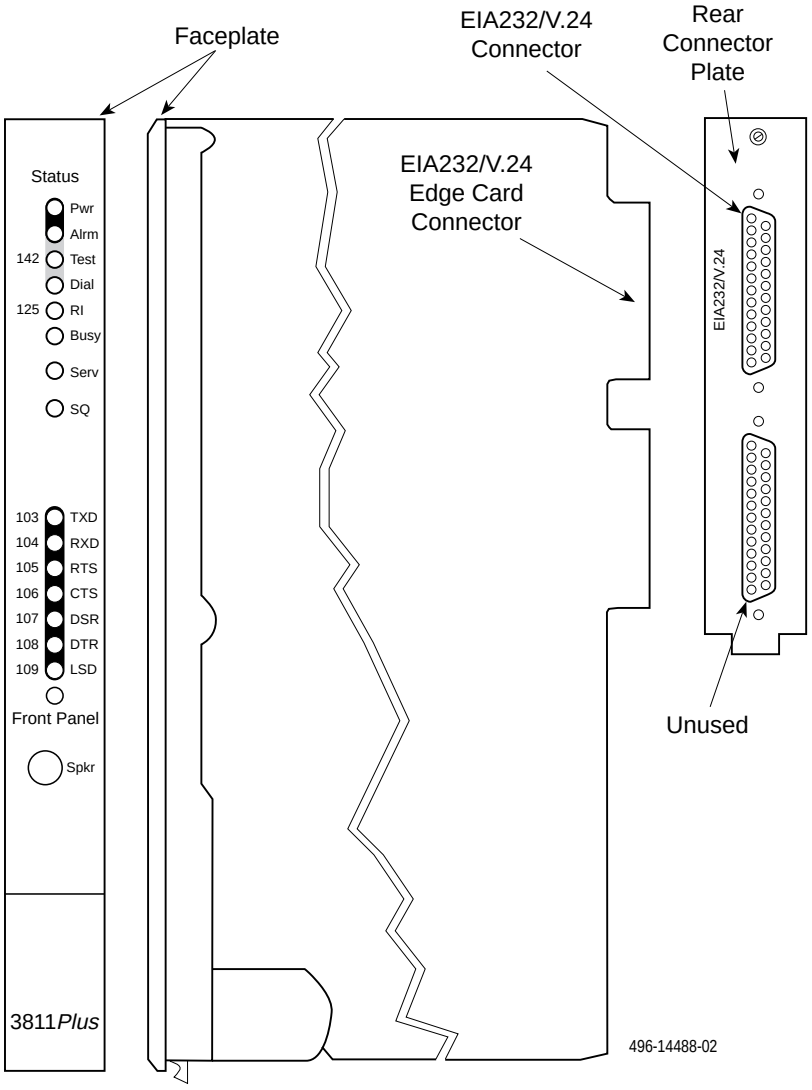



**Figure 3-1. 3811*Plus* Modem**

The installation of a 3811*Plus* varies slightly if an SDCP is installed on the front of the carrier. To install a 3811*Plus* modem into the carrier without an SDCP, perform the following steps:

**CAUTION**

**If you remove the 3811*Plus* from the carrier, always use a ground strap when handling the modem. Always store the 3811*Plus* in an antistatic bag when it is removed from the carrier.**

1. At the rear of the carrier, install the rear connector plate. Make sure the plate uses the same slot position as that intended for the modem.

   Loosely fasten the plate. This allows for slight adjustments later when installing the modem.

2. At the front of the carrier, hold the modem vertically, with the latch on its faceplate in the open position, and insert it into the top and bottom card guides of one of the slots numbered 1–16 (see Figure 3-2).

   Slide the modem into the slot, aligning the modem with the rear connector plate, until the backplane connector and DTE connector seat firmly into the back of the carrier. The faceplate latch automatically closes as you push the modem into the carrier. To lock the modem into the carrier, press the faceplate latch until a click is heard.

3. If the carrier is connected to power, the **Power** LED on the faceplate of the 3811*Plus* lights up. After several seconds the modem completes its power-up self-test in which all faceplate LEDs light up. If the modem fails, or an alarm condition exists, the **Alrm** LED on the faceplate lights up or flashes.

   Return to the rear of the carrier and tighten the rear connector plate.

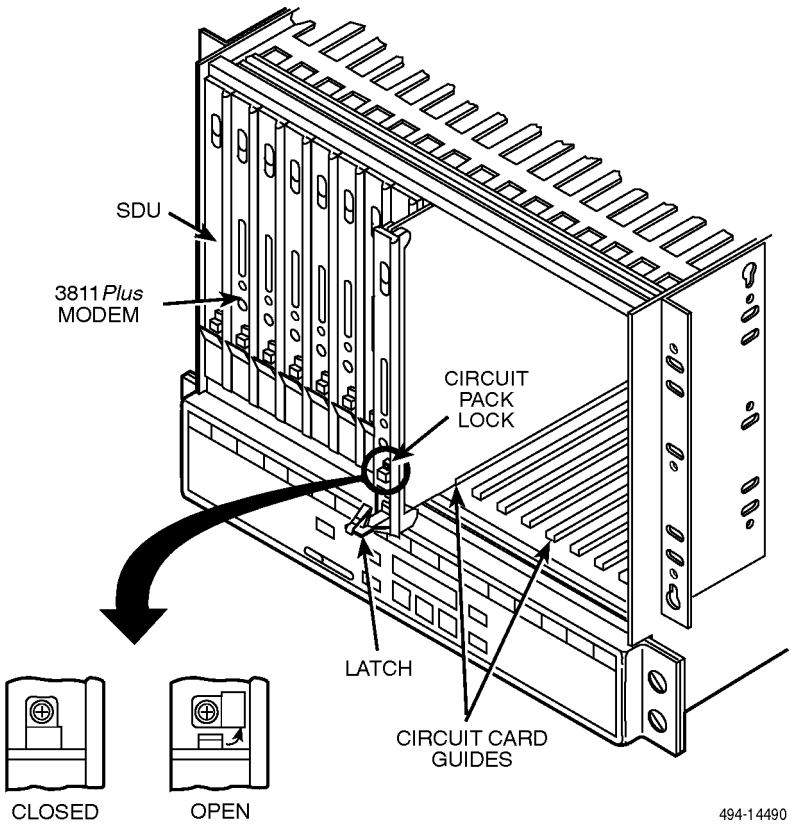



**Figure 3-2. Installing a 3811*Plus* Modem**

If the modem is to communicate with an installed SDCP, install the modem as described above and perform the following steps:

1. Press the Select key on the SDCP. The cursor appears in the carrier selection entry.

2. Press the F1 (↑) or F2 (↓) key until the carrier number you want appears on the LCD.

   The carrier number selection has a range of 1 to 8 since a single SDCP can control a configuration of up to eight carriers. (This is only possible if the SDU is installed.)

3. Press the ▻ key to position the cursor on the slot selection entry.

4. Press the F1 (↑) or F2 (↓) key until the slot number (1–16) you want appears on the LCD. Ignore the AB designator that appears on the LCD since it is not applicable to the 3811*Plus* modem.

5. Press the Select key to place the SDCP in direct communication with the selected modem.

   The LCD displays the Top-Level menu for the selected modem. In addition, the Front Panel LED on the modem's faceplate lights up.

6. Once you have determined that the modem is installed properly and completed its power-up self-test, rotate the circuit pack lock until it covers the faceplate latch (Figure 3-2). This prevents the modem from accidently being removed once it is installed in a carrier.

7. Configure the modem as described in the following chapter.

# Removing and Replacing 3811*Plus* Modems

It is not necessary to power down the carrier to remove and replace a 3811*Plus* modem. Perform the following steps:

**CAUTION**

**If you remove the 3811*Plus* modem from the carrier, always use a ground strap when handling the modem. Always store the 3811*Plus* in an antistatic bag when it is removed from the carrier.**

1. Rotate the circuit pack lock until the release tab is exposed.

2. Press down on the release tab and pull the modem away from the carrier's backplane.

# Front Panel Operation 4


Overview . . . . . 4-1
Diagnostic Control Panels . . . . . 4-1
3810*Plus* and 3820*Plus* DCP . . . . . 4-1
3811*Plus* Faceplate and Shared Diagnostic Control Panel (SDCP) . . . . . 4-2
Status Indicators . . . . . 4-2
DCP Operation . . . . . 4-4
LCD Display . . . . . 4-4
Keypad . . . . . 4-5
Menu Structure . . . . . 4-6
Top-Level Menu Status and Operational Messages . . . . . 4-7
Selecting Factory Configuration Options . . . . . 4-11


## Overview

This chapter describes how to use the diagnostic control panel (DCP) of the 3800*Plus* modem.

## Diagnostic Control Panels

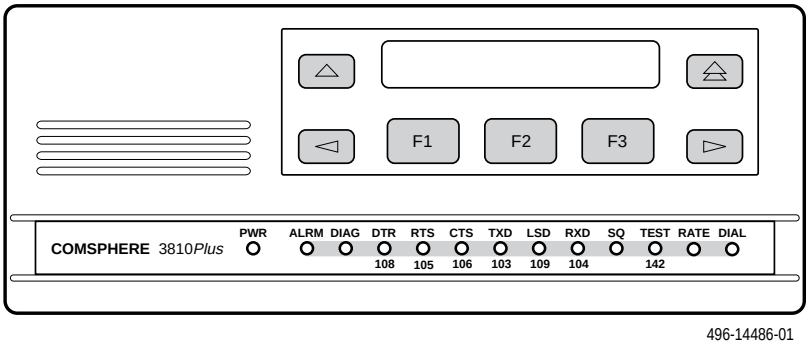
There are two types of DCPs: the front panel on the standalone 3810*Plus* and 3820*Plus* modems, and the shared diagnostic control panel (SDCP), an optional feature used with a 3811*Plus* modem installed in a COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier. Both DCPs have a two-line, 32-character liquid crystal display (LCD) and keypad through which Top-Level menu branches are accessed to perform the following:

- Initiate and disconnect dial operations
- Check modem status
- Set up configuration options
- Initiate diagnostic tests
- Access remote modems through the local modem's DCP

The LCD displays the result of any command initiated using the DCP. Most of these operations can be performed from an attached asynchronous DTE using the AT command set.

### 3810*Plus* and 3820*Plus* DCP

The DCP of 3810*Plus* and 3820*Plus* modems (Figure 4-1) contains status indicators, pushbutton-type keys, and an LCD.




496-14486-01

**Figure 4-1. 3810*Plus* and 3820*Plus* DCP**

### 3811*Plus* Faceplate and Shared Diagnostic Control Panel (SDCP)

The shared diagnostic control panel (SDCP) is used to manage carrier-mounted 3811*Plus* modems. Use the SDCP to issue commands to view and select configuration options on, or to monitor tests for, a specific 3811*Plus* modem.

The faceplate of the 3811*Plus* contains LED status indicators that monitor the operation of the modem. After the SDCP is connected to the modem, the Front Panel indicator of the selected modem lights to show that the modem is connected.

Figure 4-2 shows the SDCP and the shared diagnostic unit (SDU) it interfaces with.

## Status Indicators

The status indicators on a 3800*Plus* modem continuously provide information on the modem's operating condition. All of the status indicators on the 3810*Plus* or 3820*Plus* modem are on the DCP (Figure 4-1), whereas the status indicators for the carrier-mounted 3811*Plus* modem are located on its faceplate, the SDCP, and the SDU faceplate (Figure 4-2).

The standalone 3810*Plus* or 3820*Plus* modem's DCP has 13 LEDs, and the carrier-mounted 3811*Plus* has 16 LEDs. These LEDs are listed and described in Table 4-1; LEDs specific to one model type have the appropriate model number shown in the table.

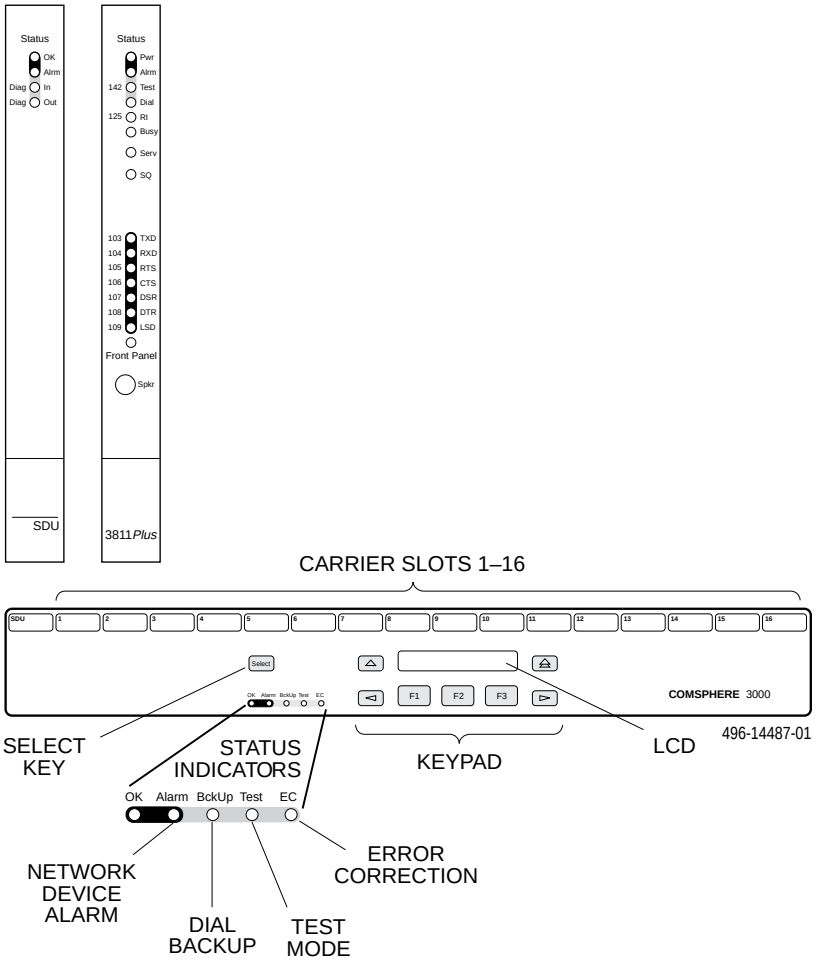



**Figure 4-2. Optional SDCP, 3811*Plus* Faceplate, and Optional SDU**

**Table 4-1**
**3800*Plus* DCP LEDs**

| Label | Color | Indicates |
|---|---|---|
| **Pwr** | green | ON – Power is on and the modem is capable of operating. |
| **Alrm** | red | Flashing – A malfunction has been detected in either the modem or COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier. |
| **Diag** (3810*Plus* and 3820*Plus* only) | green | The modem has responded to a diagnostic command from network management. |
| **Test/142** | yellow | The modem is involved in a test. Normal operation is not possible. |
| **Dial** | green | Quick Flashing – The modem is attempting to establish a call over the dial network.<br>Slow Flashing – The modem is in Dial Standby mode.<br>ON – The modem has established a dial connection.<br>OFF – A dial connection does not exist. |
| **RI/125** (3811*Plus* only) | green | A ringing signal is being received. |
| **Busy** (3811*Plus* only) | yellow | ON – The modem is placed in a forced busy condition and is off-hook. |
| **Serv** (3811*Plus* only) | yellow | ON – The modem is connected to the carrier service line rather than the normally assigned dial network. |
| **SQ** | yellow | The receive telephone line signal is degraded. |
| **TXD/103** | green | The modem is receiving data from the DTE to transmit. (ON equals space.) |
| **RXD/104** | green | Data is being transferred to the DTE. (ON equals space.) |
| **RTS/105** | green | RTS signal is ON. |
| **CTS/106** | green | CTS signal is ON, or the modem is configured to force ON CTS, or AT commands are enabled. |
| **DSR/107** (3811*Plus* only) | green | DSR signal is ON, or the modem is configured to force ON DSR. |
| **DTR/108** | green | The DTE has turned ON DTR, or the modem is configured to ignore DTR. |
| **LSD/109** | green | The modem has detected a valid carrier signal and is capable of transferring data to the DTE, or the modem is configured to force ON LSD. |
| **Front Panel** (3811*Plus* only) | yellow | ON – The modem is connected to the carrier's SDCP. |
| **Rate** (3810*Plus* and 3820*Plus* only) | yellow | ON – The modem is connected at a data rate lower than the line rate it is configured for.<br>OFF – The modem is connected at its configured line rate. |

The SDCP LEDs are listed and described in Table 4-2.

**Table 4-2**
**SDCP LEDs**

| Label | Color | Indicates |
|---|---|---|
| **OK** | green | Power is ON and the modem is capable of operating. |
| **Alarm** | red | The modem has detected a problem with its operation. For example, the modem failed a self-test. |
| **BckUp** | yellow | The modem, originally configured for leased-line operation, is now operating on dial networks in a Dial Backup mode. |
| **Test** | yellow | The modem is involved in a test. Normal operation is not possible. |
| **EC** | green | Modem is in Error Control mode. |

# DCP Operation

The 3800*Plus* modem's diagnostic control panel (DCP) is the user interface to all functions used to configure and control the modem. This interface includes the status light-emitting diodes (LEDs), and a two-line, 32-character liquid crystal display (LCD) and keypad (Figure 4-3).

Use the DCP to display the following kinds of information:

- Operational status
- Configuration options
- DCP entry displays
- Remote modem access

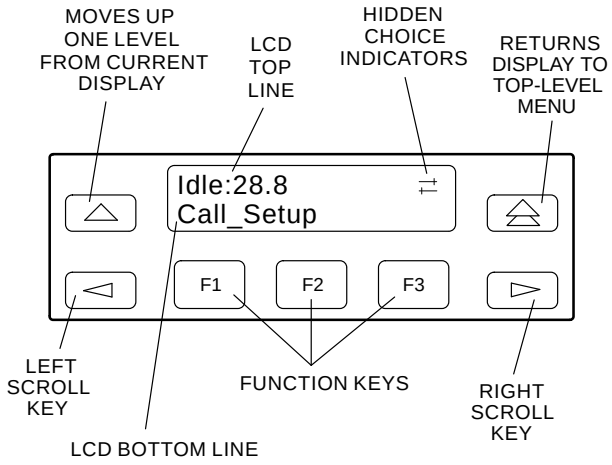



**Figure 4-3. 3800*Plus* LCD and Keypad**

## LCD Display

The LCD consists of a top line and bottom line, with each displaying a maximum of 16 characters at a time. If additional information appears on the LCD than what is currently displayed, a hidden choice indicator (< or ⇄ or >) appears in the upper right-hand corner of the LCD. Use the ◅ or ▻ key to scroll in the indicated direction to display more selections onto the LCD.

### *Hidden Choice Indicators*

The Hidden Choice Indicators serve as an alert that other selections are available besides what is currently displayed on the LCD. These indicators appear as one of the following symbols:

#### *Right Scroll Indicator >*

The right scroll indicator displays when more choices are available to the right of what is currently displayed on the LCD.

### *Left/Right Scroll Indicator* ⇄

The left/right scroll indicator displays when more choices are available to the left and right of what is currently displayed on the LCD.

### *Left Scroll Indicator* <

The left scroll indicator displays when more choices are available to the left of what is currently displayed on the LCD. The LCD does not wrap around to the first choice once you have reached the end of choices.

### *Remote Mode Indicator* r

If the local 3800*Plus* modem establishes a connection with the remote 3800*Plus* modem via the Remote branch, then r appears in place of the hidden choice indicator on both modems.

## Keypad

The DCP on the 3810*Plus* or 3820*Plus* has seven keys while the optional SDCP of the COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier has eight keys. The additional key on the carrier is the Select key, used to connect the SDCP to a specific slot in the carrier.

### ⏢ *Key*

The ⏢ key returns you to the Top-Level menu display from anywhere in the menu tree.

Pressing ⏢ while changing configuration options displays the message **Save Straps? Yes No**. If **No** is selected, changes made to configuration options are not saved and the Top-Level menu appears. If **Yes** is selected, then changes are saved to either Active (Saved), Customer 1, or Customer 2 configuration areas.

### △ *Key*

The △ key moves you up one level in the menu tree.

### ◅ *and* ▻ *Keys*

Use the ◅ and ▻ keys to move the viewing window left or right and to scroll the remaining branches and selections into view. A maximum of three selections can be displayed at one time.

These keys also allow you to move the cursor one character to the left or right on data entry displays; for example, to allow entry of one digit at a time.

### *F1, F2, F3 Keys*

Function keys select the LCD choice that appears above the function key; they are labeled F1, F2, and F3. If a selection spans more than one function key, then any of those keys choose that selection.

### *Up and Down Scroll Indicators* ↑ ↓

To enter a number on the DCP, such as a telephone number to be stored in the modem's directory, the function keys F2 (↑) or F3 (↓) are used. A displayed number is increased or decreased according to whether the key associated with the up arrow or the down arrow is pressed. In other applications, such as password entry, only the up arrow is displayed, and the displayed numbers can only be incremented.

### Select *Key (3811Plus only)*

The Select key appears on the optional SDCP of the COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier. It is used to connect the SDCP to a modem in a specific slot in the carrier.

# Menu Structure

The menu tree is a hierarchical structure used to display functions that configure and control local and remote 3800*Plus* modems. It is accessed via the DCP and is shown in Appendix A.

The menu tree contains the following branches:

**Call Setup** — Used to dial, disconnect, and answer telephone calls as well as store up to 10 telephone numbers in directory locations. (See Chapter 5.)

**Status** — Used to monitor the current status of the VF line and DTE interface as well as view the identity of the modem. (See Chapter 6.)

**Test** — Used to begin and end various modem tests. (See Chapter 7.)

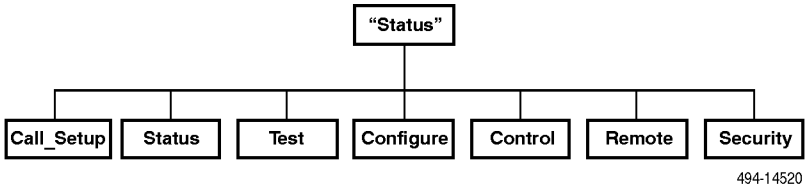
**Configure** — Used to change and save the modem's configuration options. (See Chapter 8.)

**Control** — Used to control the modem's hardware and software functions. (See Chapter 9.)

**Remote** — Used to access and control a remote 3800*Plus* modem. (See Chapter 10.)

**Security** — Used to control the modem's dial access security. Appears only if the optional security feature is installed. (See Chapter 11.)

Menu tree branches are described in Chapters 5 through 11. Functions that appear on the LCD vary depending upon the type of model installed, its operating mode, and software configuration.



## Top-Level Menu Status and Operational Messages

Access to all menu tree branches from the DCP begins at the Top-Level menu, the head of the menu hierarchy. The LCD's top line identifies the modem status, as listed in Table 4-3, while the bottom line displays the main menu tree branches and operational and dial access security messages, as listed in Table 4-4 and Table 4-5.

Messages listed in Table 4-4 are common operational messages that occur during modem operation. These messages normally appear on the second line of the LCD.

Messages listed in Table 4-5 are dial access security messages that can occur when the optional security feature is installed.

The Top-Level menu's main branches appear on the LCD in the order of Call Setup, Status, Test, Configure, Control, Security, and Remote. These branches are described in the following chapters.

**Table 4-3**
**(1 of 3)**
**Top Level Menu Status**

| Normal Operation Status Message | Indicates |
|---|---|
| Idle:*MR** | The modem is configured for dial network operation and is on-hook. |
| Leased:*MR** | The modem is operating on leased lines at the displayed data rate. |
| OnLine:*MR* EC*** | Indicates the modem is online, in Data mode, and operating at the displayed data rate. EC (error control) displays if error control is operational. |
| Fax Tx:*MR** | The modem is transmitting a fax on a dial line. |
| Fax Rx:*MR** | The modem is receiving a fax on a dial line. |
| Ring Indicate | The local modem is receiving an incoming ring. |
| Test:*MR** | The modem is in test mode operating at the displayed data rate. |
| **Alarm Status Message*** ** | **Indicates** |
| Make Busy | Indicates the modem is in a Make Busy condition. |
| Power On Fail | Indicates the modem has failed its Power-On Self-test. |
| Self Health Fail | Indicates a failure in the modem's hardware components. |

*MR – Modem Rate indicates the data rate the modem is using. One of the following values appears: 300, 1200, 2400, 4800, 7200, 9600, 12K (12,000), 14.4K (14,400), 16.8K (16,800), 19.2K (19,200), 21,600, 24,000, 26,400, 28,800, 31,200, or 33,600 bps.

**EC – Error Control indicates the modem is online and using V.42 or MNP error control. One of the following values appears after the modem rates listed above: MNP2, MNP3, MNP4, MNP5, V42, V42b, or NoEC. (NoEC indicates the modem is connected in Buffer mode rather than error control. If an EC value does not appear, then the modem is in Direct mode.)

*** The Alarm Status Messages only appear when the Normal Operation Status Messages display; the LCD alternates between the two message sets.

**Table 4-3**
**(2 of 3)**
**Top Level Menu Status**

| Normal Call Setup Messages | Indicates |
|---|---|
| Off Hook | The modem is off-hook and waiting to dial a telephone number. |
| Dialing | The remote modem is being dialed. |
| Training | The modem is training or retraining. |
| EC Negotiating | The local and remote modems are negotiating the highest possible level of error control compatible between both modems. Once a level is selected, this LCD message disappears. |
| **Call Failure Messages** | **Indicates** |
| Busy Signal | The answering modem is busy. |
| Dial Line in Use | The modem is already operating on dial networks when another call attempt has been issued. |
| Invalid Number | The modem has dialed a telephone number not stored in a directory location. |
| No Answer Tone | The answering modem has not answered within the time limit specified by the No Answer Timeout configuration option. |
| No Dial – DTR | The modem cannot dial because DTR is Off. |
| No Dial – Test | The modem cannot dial because it is running a Test. |
| No Dial Tone | The modem has aborted the call because it cannot detect a dial tone. |
| No Quiet Answer | The modem has detected No Quiet Answer (@) before the time-out setting of the No Answer Disconnect configuration option. |
| Trunk Busy | The modem is receiving a fast (trunk) busy. |
| **Call Disconnect Messages** | **Indicates** |
| ATH Disconnect | The modem has disconnected due to an ATH command. |
| Bad Lines Disc | The modem has disconnected because the lines do not support the modulation and/or data rate selected. |
| No Carrier Disc | The modem disconnects due to the loss of carrier signal from the remote modem. |
| DTR Disconnect | The modem has disconnected due to the loss of DTR from the DTE. |
| EC Disconnect | The modem has disconnected due to failure to negotiate Error Control mode. |
| LongSpace Disc | The modem has disconnected due to the detection of a long space. |
| NoData Disc | The modem has disconnected due to a lack of transmitted and received data. |
| Disconnecting | The modem has begun the disconnect sequence. |
| Rmt Cmnded Disc | The modem has disconnected due to a V.32 or V.34 Cleardown received from the remote modem. |

**Table 4-3**
**(3 of 3)**
**Top Level Menu Status**

| Dial Backup Messages | Indicates |
|---|---|
| Dial Standby | The modem is operating in Dial Standby mode. |
| DialBckUp:*MR** | The modem is operating in a Dial Backup mode at the displayed data rate and is configured for Direct mode. |
| Backup:*MR* EC*** | The modem is operating in Dial Backup mode and is configured for error control and data compression on leased lines. |
| Stndby:*MR* EC*** | The modem is operating in Dial Standby mode and is configured for error control and data compression on leased lines. |
| **Firmware Download Result Messages** | **Indicates** |
| DownldOnly Mode | Indicates that a local download of firmware or a remote cloning of firmware has failed. The modem is currently in a Download Only mode in which only another download attempt is possible. |
| Frmware Upgrade | Indicates that a local download of firmware or a remote cloning of firmware was successful. |
| RemClone Failed | Displays on the local modem's LCD and indicates that a remote cloning of firmware has failed. |
| Remote Clone OK | Displays on the local modem's LCD and indicates that a remote cloning of firmware was successful. |
| **AT Command Reset Message** | **Indicates** |
| Reset by AT command | The modem has performed a reset in response to an ATZ command. |

* MR. Modem Rate indicates the data rate the modem is using. One of the following values appears: 300, 1200, 2400, 4800, 7200, 9600, 12K (12,000), 14.4K (14,400), 16.8K (16,800), 19.2K (19,200), 21,600, 24,000, 26,400, 28,800, 31,200, or 33,600 bps.

** EC. Error Control indicates the modem is online and using V.42 or MNP error control. One of the following values appears after the modem rates listed above: MNP2, MNP3, MNP4, MNP5, V42, V42b, or NoEC. (NoEC indicates the modem is connected in Buffer mode rather than error control. If an EC value does not appear, then the modem is in Direct mode.)

**Table 4-4**
**Common Operational Messages**

| Common Operational Messages | Indicates |
|---|---|
| Please Wait... | Appears when a command to a local device takes more than two seconds to complete. |
| Command Sent... | Appears when a command is sent to a remote modem. |
| No Rem Response or Remote Modem Fail | Appears when a remote modem does not respond to a command within 5 seconds. |
| Command Complete | Appears when a command, issued to a local or remote modem, is completed. |
| Invalid Command | Appears when the modem cannot complete a command. |

**Table 4-5**
**Dial Access Security Messages**

| Dial Access Security Messages | Indicates |
|---|---|
| Get VF PsWd | The answering modem is waiting for the originating caller to transmit a VF password. |
| Get DTE PsWd | The answering modem is waiting to receive a valid DTE password from the remote DTE. |
| VF PsWd Timeout | The modem did not finish answering a call (disconnected) because the allowed time limit was exceeded before the modem received a VF password from the originating dialer. |
| Unknown DTEpswd | The modem did not finish answering a call (disconnected) because the DTE passwords received from the remote DTE were invalid. |
| No Orig PsWd | The modem did not attempt to establish a call as requested because the AT dial command did not contain an originate access password. |
| Unknown VF PsWd | The modem did not finish answering a call (disconnected) because the modem received an invalid VF password. |
| DTEpswd Timeout | The modem did not finish answering a call (disconnected) because the allowed time limit was exceeded before the modem received a DTE password from the remote DTE. |
| Inval Orig PsWd | The modem did not attempt to establish the call as requested because the originate password in the AT dial command was not valid. |
| DTR Dial Blocked | Appears if DTR dialing is used and Answer Access or Originate Access security is enabled. DTR dialing is not permitted when security is enabled. |
| SecurityBlocked | Appears only when the modem is in base mode (a mode that occurs during a firmware download) and Answer Access Security is enabled. In this case, the access verification capabilities are not available and the modem does not pass data to the DTE under any circumstances. |

# Selecting Factory Configuration Options

After the modem passes the power-up self-test, configure it for operation using one of the factory preset configurations.

The 3800*Plus* modems have several factory preset templates that contain the most commonly used configuration options (straps) for Asynchronous Dial, Synchronous Dial, Synchronous Leased (Answer or Originate), UNIX hardware network, cellular mobile, and cellular PSTN configurations. Your modem is shipped from the factory with the Async Dial default configuration options stored in memory. If Sync Dial, Sync Leased, UNIX Dial, or Cellular is more appropriate for your configuration, then you must change the factory setting using either the modem's DCP or the AT command set as described in the following sections.

The preset configuration gives you a "head start" in getting your modem operating and reduces the amount of time required to configure your modem. For a better understanding of DCP operation and factory preset configuration options, refer to Chapter 8, *Configure Branch*.

## *Using the Diagnostic Control Panel (DCP)*

The DCP's liquid crystal display (LCD) consists of two 16-character lines which display modem status, control functions, and configuration options as well as indicating your location in the Top-Level menu tree (Appendix A).

To change the factory template using the DCP, perform the following steps:

1. On the DCP press the ▻ key until **Configure** comes into view.

2. Press the function key below Configure to select the Configure branch.

   The LCD now displays **Ld EditArea frm.**

3. Press the ▻ key until **Factory** comes into view, then press the F1 key to display the factory preset configurations.

   Factory preset configurations are **Async Dial, Sync Dial, Sync Leased**, **UNIX Dial**, **Cellular (Mobile)**, and **Cellular (PSTN)**. If Sync Leased is selected, you must choose either **Answer** or **Originate** mode.

4. Press the ▻ key until the appropriate factory preset appears on the LCD, and press the corresponding function key to select your choice.

5. **Choose Function** appears and displays the Edit and Save functions.

6. Press the F3 key (Save) to save the new factory preset configuration to one of three configuration areas, **Active (Saved), Customer 1**, or **Customer 2**.

   (These three configuration areas are nonvolatile memory locations. Active (Saved) contains the most recently saved changes to any configuration options. In the event of power loss, the modem retrieves these configuration options. Customer 1 and Customer 2 are user-defined configuration areas.)

   The LCD now displays **Sav EditArea to**.

7. Press the ▻ key until the appropriate configuration area appears on the LCD, then press the corresponding function key to select your choice. (Saving configuration options to the Active (Saved) configuration area automatically saves them to the Active (Operating) configuration area.) The LCD displays **Command Complete**.

8. The modem is now configured with the selected factory template. Press the ⏎ key to return to the Top-Level menu.

Refer to Chapter 8, *Configure Branch*, for more information regarding default factory configuration options.

## *Using AT Commands*

When using AT commands, the following criteria must be met:

- Make sure the asynchronous DTE's communication software is configured for 10-bit character format (for example, 8 data bits, no parity, and 1 stop bit).
- Make sure the DTE (RS-232D) cable is attached to the DTE connector on the rear of the 3810*Plus* or 3820*Plus* modem, or (for the 3811*Plus* modem) the rear of the COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier, and the correct serial communications port on the asynchronous DTE.

- On initial power-up, the modem is in Command mode. To verify that the modem is connected and functioning properly, enter the following:

  ***TYPE:*** AT

  ***PRESS:*** Return (Enter)

  The screen displays **OK.**

If the modem does not return **OK**, refer to Appendix B, *Troubleshooting*.

> **NOTE**
>
> If you have already changed the factory preset configuration you may have lost AT command control. To regain AT command control, select, via the DCP, the Async Dial factory preset configuration as described earlier in *Using the Diagnostic Control Panel (DCP)*.

To change a factory template using AT commands, perform the following steps (for more information on changing factory templates using AT commands, refer to Chapter 13, *AT Command Set and S-Registers*).

1. Use the AT&F&W command to load the appropriate factory configuration to the appropriate storage area. Enter the following:

   ***TYPE:*** AT&F*y*&W*n*

   ***Where:*** *y* is one of the following Factory configurations:
   0 for Async Dial
   1 for Sync Dial
   2 for Sync Leased (Answer)
   3 for UNIX Dial
   4 for Sync Leased (Originate)
   5 for Cellular (Mobile)
   6 for Cellular (PSTN)

   (NOTE: &F1, &F2, and &F4 remove AT command control. The only way to return to AT command control is through the DCP as described earlier in *Using the Diagnostic Control Panel (DCP)*.)

   and

   ***Where:*** *n* is one of the following storage areas:
   0 for Active (Saved)
   1 for Customer 1
   2 for Customer 2

   (NOTE: These three configuration areas are nonvolatile memory locations. Active (Saved) contains the most recently saved changes to any configuration options. In the event of power loss, the modem retrieves these configuration options. Customer 1 and Customer 2 are user-defined configuration areas.)

   ***PRESS:*** Return (Enter)

2. The selected factory configuration is saved.

The &V (View) command can be used to display the configuration options in effect. The output of the &V command can be saved to a file and printed (using your communications software), providing both a record of your configuration and a worksheet for configuration enhancements. Refer to Chapter 13, *AT Commands and S-Registers*, for more on AT commands.

## Diagnostic Control Panel Security Access

**NOTE**

This page of the manual is self-supporting and can be removed to prevent unwanted knowledge of the DCP security access selections.

Use the DCP security access function to ‘‘lock” the DCP of any 3800*Plus* modem and prevent unwanted user access. Two options are available for this function: Grant and Deny.

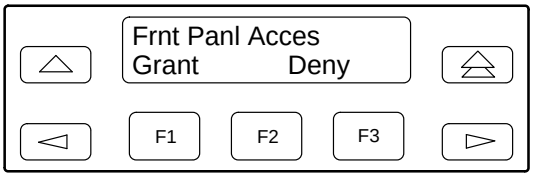
Grant allows any branch of the Top-Level menu to be accessed from the DCP. Deny allows access only to the Status branch of the Top-Level menu. All 3800*Plus* modems are shipped from the factory with DCP access granted.

To access the Front Panel (DCP) Security Access function, perform the following:

Press the △ key three times.

Press the ⏫ key twice.

Press the △ key once.




Select Grant to allow access or select Deny to lock DCP access.

Either selection results in a return to the Top-Level menu.

# Call Setup Branch 5

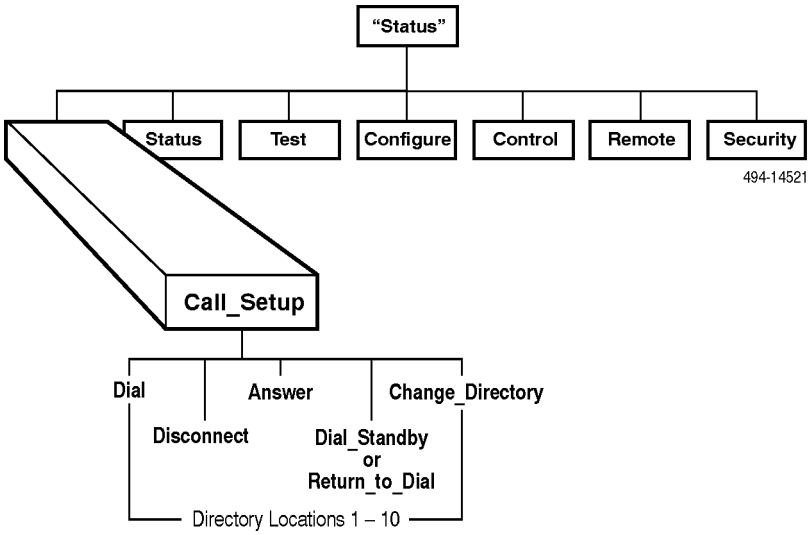

Overview . . . . . 5-1
Call Setup Branch . . . . . 5-2
Dial . . . . . 5-2
Disconnect . . . . . 5-2
Answer . . . . . 5-3
Dial Standby/Return to Dial . . . . . 5-3
Change Directory . . . . . 5-4
Entering Telephone Numbers and Dial Command Modifiers into Directory Locations . . . . . 5-5


## Overview

The Call Setup branch of the Top-Level menu allows you to dial, disconnect, and answer telephone calls. It also allows you to create and store up to 10 telephone numbers to directory locations. Six different functions can appear under Call Setup: Dial, Disconnect, Answer, Dial Standby or Return to Dial (when applicable), and Change Directory.

**NOTE**

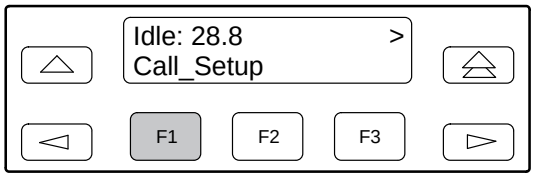
The Dial Standby and Return to Dial functions only appear when the modem is in Dial Backup mode.



# Call Setup Branch

In the following descriptions, the shaded key indicates what key to press to perform the described operation.

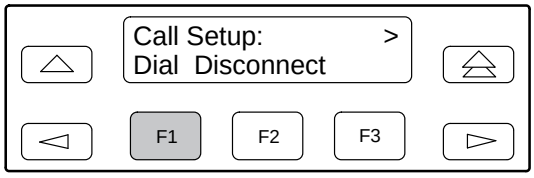
To access the Call Setup branch from the Top-Level menu, select Call Setup:



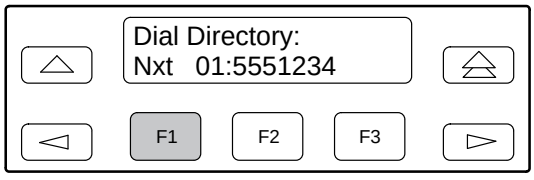

## Dial

Dial allows you to dial any telephone number stored in directory locations 1–10. Any telephone number dialed using the DCP must already exist in a directory location. Refer to Change Directory for information on storing telephone numbers in directory locations.

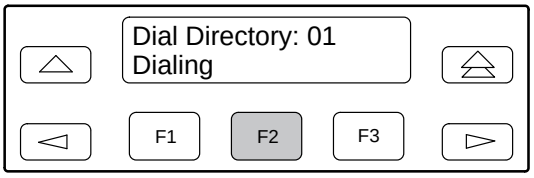
To access Dial from the Call Setup branch, make the following selection:




Select Dial to display the first directory telephone number.




To view other directory locations, select Nxt.




Once the directory location you want appears on the LCD, press the F2 or F3 key to dial the number.

If the connection is successful, the modem is online and one of the Normal Operation status messages appears on the LCD. If the connection is not successful, the LCD displays one of the Call Failure status messages. (See Table 3-3 in Chapter 3.)

If DTE dialing is enabled and any character is received from the DTE before the modem goes online, the dial sequence is aborted. This is known as any-key abort.

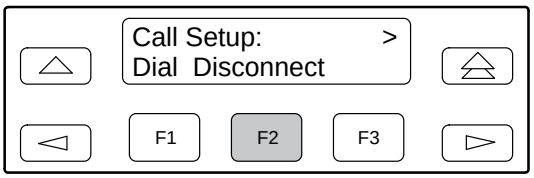
### *AT Command Equivalent*

The AT command equivalent for Dial is DS=*n*, where n is directory location 1–10.

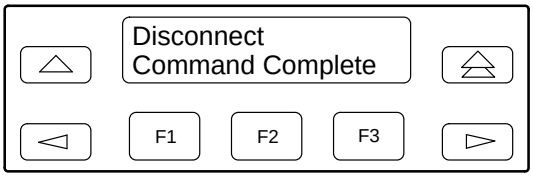
## Disconnect

Disconnect allows the modem to go on-hook (hang up). Use this function when you want to disconnect an established call on a dial line.

To access Disconnect from the Call Setup branch, make the following selection:




Select Disconnect.




The modem goes on-hook (hangs up) and the call is disconnected. This includes any calls being used for dial backup of leased lines. The **Command Complete** status message is displayed.

To exit this function and remain in the Call Setup branch, press the △ key. To exit and return to the Top-Level menu, press the ⏫ key.

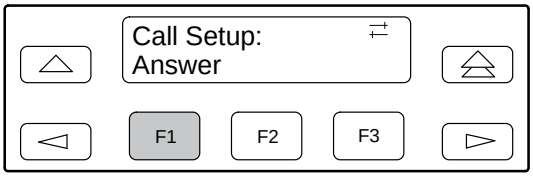
### *AT Command Equivalent*

The AT command equivalent for Disconnect is H or H0.

## Answer

Answer allows the modem to go off-hook, generate an answer tone, and begin the handshaking process with the calling modem. Use the Answer function when the Auto-Answer Ring Count configuration option is disabled. (See the *Line Dialer* section in Chapter 7, *Configure Branch*.)

To access Answer from the Call Setup branch, make the following selections:




Press the ▷ key until Answer is displayed. Select Answer.

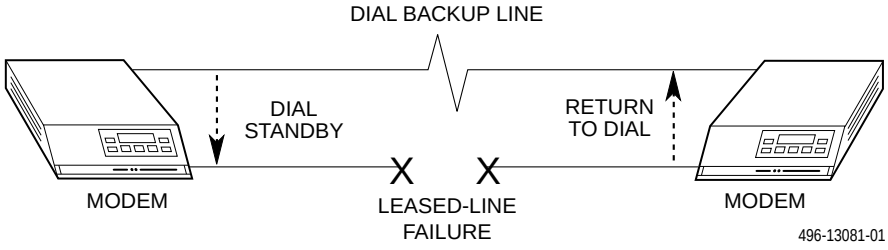
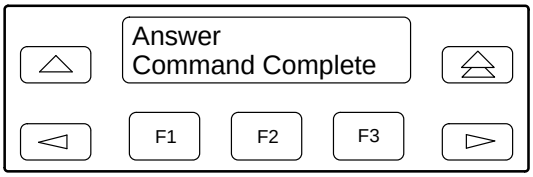



**Figure 5-1. Dial Backup**




The modem goes off-hook and attempts to establish a connection in Answer mode. The **Command Complete** status message appears on the LCD.

To exit this function and remain in the Call Setup branch, press the △ key. To exit and return to the Top-Level menu, press the ⏫ key.

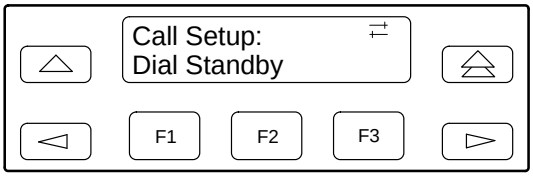
### *AT Command Equivalent*

The AT command equivalent for Answer is A.

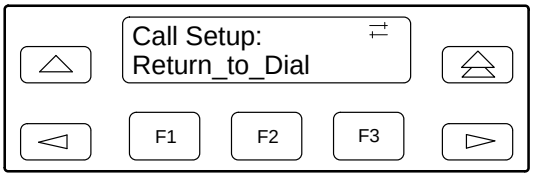
## Dial Standby/Return to Dial

The Dial Standby and Return to Dial functions appear on the LCD only after the modem, operating on leased lines, is placed into dial backup. Once the modem is operating in Dial Backup mode, these functions allow the modem to be switched back and forth between dial and leased-line operation while still maintaining the dial connection. See Figure 5-1. (Switching between dial and leased-line operation can be performed manually or automatically by enabling the Auto Dial Standby configuration option.)

For example, under normal dial backup conditions, when a problem occurs on the leased line, the modems establish a connection over the dial network using a telephone number stored in directory location 1.

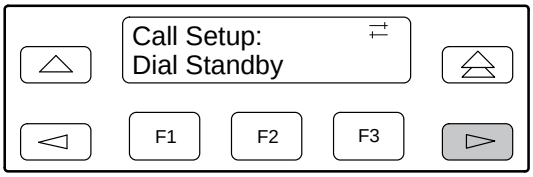



When this occurs, the Dial Standby function now appears on the LCD. By selecting this function, the modem switches back to the leased line while still maintaining the dial connection. As a result, the Return to Dial function now appears on the LCD instead of Dial Standby.

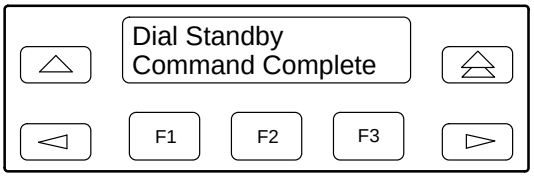



If the leased line is found to be unacceptable, select Return to Dial which switches the modem back to dial network operation (LCD displays Dial Standby). If, however, the leased line is operating properly, you can select Disconnect from the Call Setup branch and drop the dial-line call.

To access Dial Standby or Return to Dial from the Call Setup branch, make the following selections:




Press the ▻ key until Dial Standby or Return to Dial is displayed. Select the appropriate function.




If the modem is operating in a Dial Backup mode, the Dial Standby function forces the modem to leased lines and displays the status message **Command Complete**.

Once the modem is in Dial Standby mode, the Return to Dial function appears on the LCD. Selecting this function forces the modem to dial networks and displays the status message **Command Complete**.

### *AT Command Equivalent*

There is no AT Command equivalent for Dial Standby or Return to Dial.

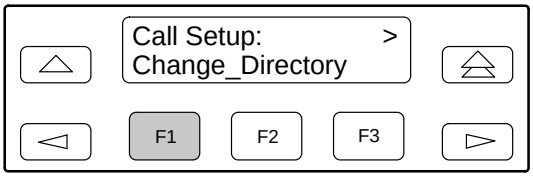
## Change Directory

Change Directory allows you to enter or modify telephone numbers. The modem has nonvolatile memory locations that allow you to store up to 10 telephone numbers. Each directory location can accept up to 40 characters; this includes the telephone number and dial command modifiers. Any telephone number dialed using the DCP Dial command must appear in a directory location.

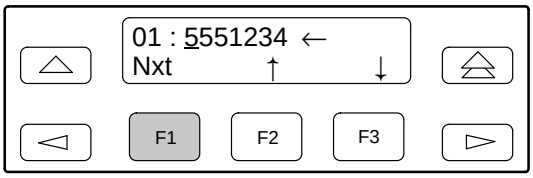
**NOTE**

If the modem is operating on leased lines and has a dial line attached for dial backup purposes, it is required that directory location 1 contain the telephone number used for dial backup.

To access Change Directory from the Call Setup branch, make the following selections:




Press the ▻ key until Change Directory is displayed. Press any function key to select Change Directory.

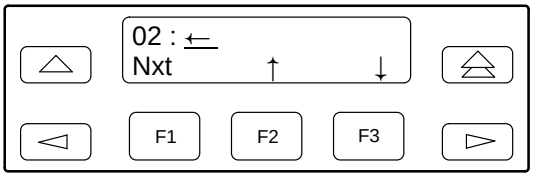



The phone number listed in directory location 1 is displayed. Select Nxt to display other directory locations.

## Entering Telephone Numbers and Dial Command Modifiers into Directory Locations

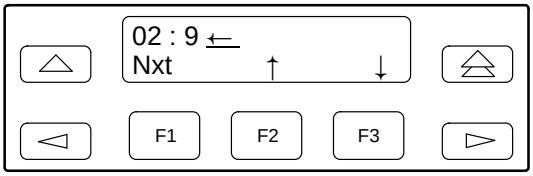
The following example uses an empty directory location for describing how to enter a telephone number. If you want to change an existing telephone number in any of the ten directory locations, follow the same procedures.

To add a telephone number to a directory location, make the following selections:



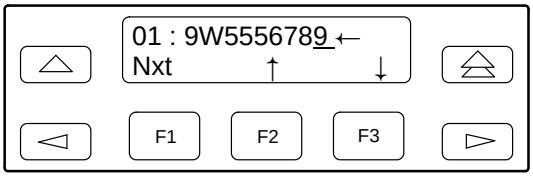

Select Nxt until a blank directory appears on the LCD. (The cursor ( ⇆ ) always appears in the first character position.)

Select F2 (↑) or F3 (↓) until the desired character is selected. This can be an alpha or numeric character.




Press the ▻ key to move the cursor to the next character position.

Continue this key sequence until the dial command modifiers and telephone number are entered. (Refer to Table 5-1 for an explanation of the dial command modifiers available from the DCP.)




To save the number just entered, scroll to the next directory location by selecting Nxt. The number is now stored in nonvolatile memory.

### *AT Command Equivalent*

The AT command for Change Directory is & Z*n*=*x*, where *n* is the directory location and *x* is the telephone number.

Table 5-1 describes what can be entered in directory locations.

**Table 5-1**
**Valid Dial Command Modifier**

| |
|---|
| Dial Command modifiers are parameters entered in the dial command string which specify how, when, and what number to dial. The following is a list of parameters the 3800*Plus* modems recognize: |
| **T** – Tone (DTMF) dial. Any digit 0–9, *, #, A, B, C, or D can be dialed as tone.<br>**P** – Pulse dial. Only the digits 0–9 can be dialed in Pulse Dial mode. |
| **,** – Pause. Causes the modem to pause before processing the next character in the dial string. The length of this pause is determined by the setting of the Pause Time configuration option (see Line Dialer configuration option group) or by value held in S-Register S8. |
| **W** or **+** – Wait for dial tone. Modem waits for a second dial tone before processing the dial string. This can be the initial dial tone or can be used when dialing through a tandem PBX. For example, 9W 555-6789. |
| **R** – Reverse Dial mode. Causes the originating modem to send out an answertone once it no longer detects ringback. (Ringback is the ring you hear at the originating site when making a call.) The R parameter must be the last character in the dial string. |
| @ – Quiet answer. Wait for five seconds of silence after dialing the number. If the silence is not detected, the modem sends the NO ANSWER result code to the DTE or displays the No Quiet Answer LCD status message. |
| **!** – Hook flash. This causes the modem to go on-hook for 0.5 seconds then return to off-hook. |
| **;** – Return to Command mode. Modem returns to Command mode after dialing a number without disconnecting the call. This permits you to enter long international telephone numbers, or additional information such as a calling card number, that would exceed the 40-character limit. |
| **Space**, **–**, and **( )**. These characters are ignored by the dial string and can be included to enhance readability. |
| ←– End of Number. Hides all characters appearing on the LCD entered to the right of this indicator. |

# Status Branch 6

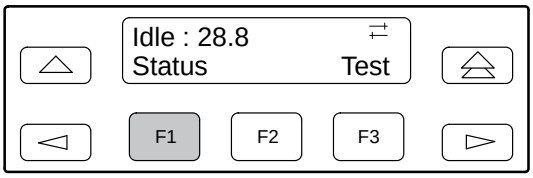

Overview . . . . . 6-1
Status Branch . . . . . 6-1
VF . . . . . 6-2
Identity . . . . . 6-3
DTE . . . . . 6-4
Options . . . . . 6-4
Record . . . . . 6-4


## Overview

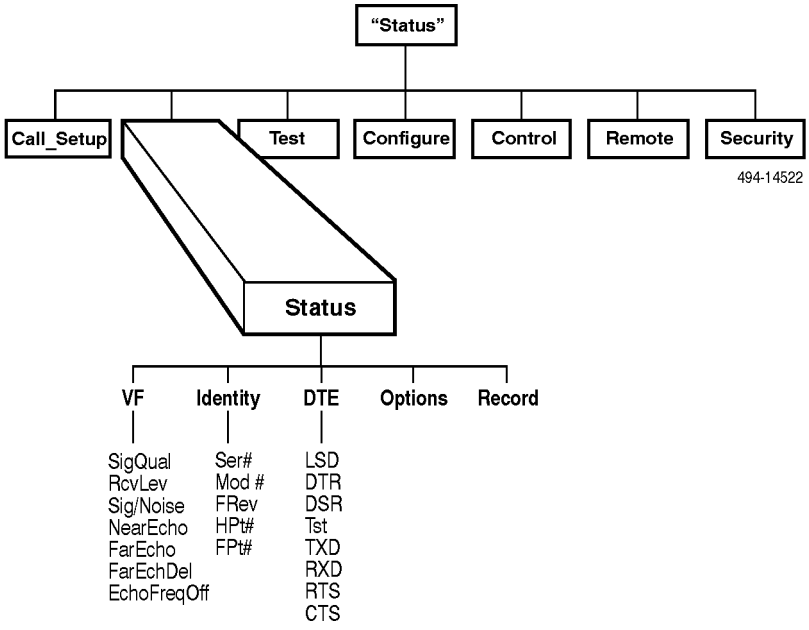
The Status branch of the Top-Level menu allows you to view the current status of the dial or leased-line connection, the DTE interface, and the identity (for example, serial number and model number) of your equipment. There are up to five selections under Status: VF, Identity, DTE, Options, and Record.

## Status Branch

To access Status from the Top-Level menu, make the following selections:



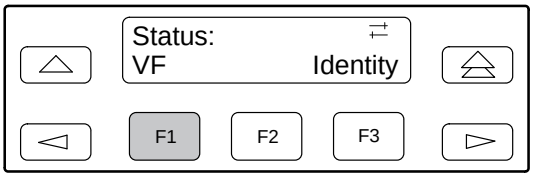

Press the ▻ key until Status appears. Select Status.



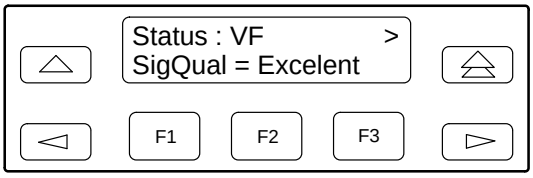
## VF

VF displays the condition of the dial or leased-line connection.

To access VF from the Status branch, make the following selection:




Select VF.




The modem's signal quality is displayed on the LCD's bottom line. Press the ▷ key to scroll and view the receive signal level, signal-to-noise ratio, near end echo, far end echo delay, and echo frequency offset.

> **NOTE**
>
> SigQual, NearEcho, FarEcho, FarEchDel, and EchoFreqOff values appear only for V.34, V.32*terbo*, V.32bis, and V.32 modulations.

**SigQual** — Signal Quality indicates the condition of the VF line. Possible values are *Excelent* (Excellent), *Good*, *Fair*, *Poor*, or *No Signal*.

**RevLev** — Receive Signal Level indicates, in decibels referenced to one milliwatt (dBm), the actual strength of the incoming signal.

**Sig/Noise** — Signal-to-Noise Ratio indicates, in decibels, the receive signal strength relative to noise on the line.

**NearEcho** — Near End Echo displays the signal level, in decibels referenced to one milliwatt (dBm), of that portion of the transmit signal which has been echoed back by the local line termination.

**FarEcho** — Far End Echo displays the signal level, in decibels referenced to one milliwatt (dBm), of that portion of the transmit signal which has been echoed back by the remote line termination.

**FarEchDel** — Far End Echo Delay indicates the roundtrip delay in milliseconds of the far end echo.

**EchoFreqOff** — Echo Frequency Offset indicates the frequency offset of the far end echo.

To exit VF and remain in the Status Branch, press the △ key. To exit and return to the Top-Level menu, press the ⏫ key.

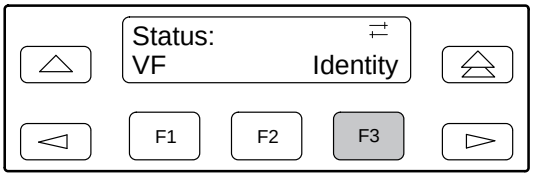
### *AT Command Equivalent*

There is no AT command equivalent for VF status.

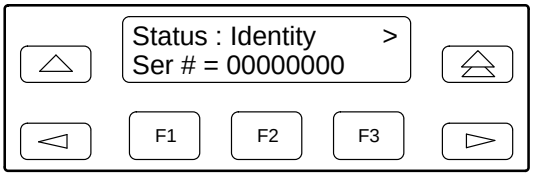
## Identity

Identity displays the modem's serial number, model number, firmware revision level, hardware part number and firmware part number. Retrieval of this information is useful if you are purchasing additional or replacement modems and/or making firmware upgrades.

To access Identity from the Status branch, make the following selection:




Select Identity.




The modem's serial number is displayed on the LCD's bottom line. Press the ▷ key to scroll and view the model number, firmware revision level, hardware part number, and firmware part number.

**Ser #** Serial number is an 8-digit number that identifies the modem.

**Mod #** Model number is an alphanumeric number that identifies the modem as either a 3810Plus modem (if the model number begins with 3980), a 3811*Plus* modem (if the model number begins with 3981), or a 3820*Plus* modem (if the model number begins with 3982).

**FRev** Firmware revision level is an alphanumeric number that identifies the level of firmware loaded in the modem.

**HPt #** Hardware part number is an 11-digit number that identifies the circuit card in the modem.

**FPt #** Firmware part number is an 11-digit number that identifies to service personnel the firmware release number.

To exit this function and remain in the Status branch, press the △ key. To exit and return to the Top-Level menu, press the ⏫ key.

### *AT Command Equivalent*

The AT command I0 displays the product code, normally 144.

The AT command I1 displays an abbreviated firmware revision number.

The AT command I2 performs an EPROM check and displays **OK** or **Error**.

The AT command I3 displays the modem's serial number.

The AT command I4 displays the modem's model number.

The AT command I5 displays the part number of the circuit card.

The AT command I6 displays the firmware release number.

The AT command I9 displays the firmware revision number (same as I1).

The AT command I10 alters the value of the product code displayed with the I0 command. See Chapter 13 for more information about the I0 command.

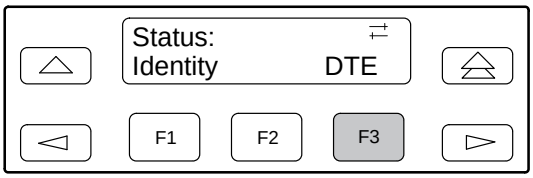
The AT command I11 performs a checksum of the modem's firmware and displays the results in hexadecimal. (There is no DCP equivalent of this command.)

The AT command I19 displays the firmware revision level.

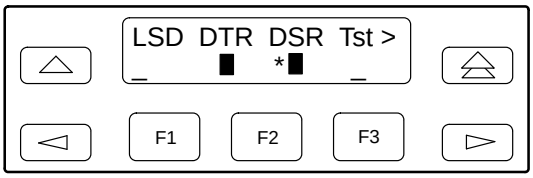
## DTE

DTE displays the state and/or activity of the EIA-232-D interface leads: LSD, DTR, DSR, Tst, TXD, RXD, RTS, and CTS signals are monitored. The interface leads status is updated every 5 seconds.

To access DTE from the Status branch, make the following selections:




Press the key until DTE appears. Select DTE.




The activity and state of the modem's DTE signal appear on the LCD's bottom line. Press the ▻ key to scroll other signals into view.

The LCD's bottom line displays a pair of symbols for each interface lead. The first symbol indicates the signal's activity during the sampling interval. (An * (asterisk) indicates at least one transition while a blank space indicates no transitions since the last update.)

The second symbol indicates the state of the interface lead at the sampling time. (A ▮ block) indicates a Space or ON condition while an underscore (_) indicates a Mark or Off condition.)

To exit this function and remain in the Status branch, press the △ key. To exit and return to the Top-Level menu, press the ⏢ key.

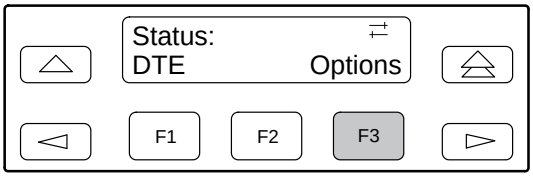
### *AT Command Equivalent*

There is no AT command for DTE status.

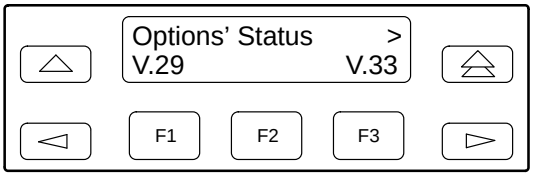
## Options

The Options Status function displays all optional firmware features currently installed in the modem (for example, V.29, V.33, and dial network management). If no firmware options are installed, **None_Installed** appears on the LCD.

To access Options from the Status branch, make the following sections:




Press the ▻ key until Options appears. Select Options.




If optional features are installed in the modem, they appear on the LCD's bottom line. If other features are installed, press the ▻ key to scroll other features into view. If no optional features are installed, None_Installed is displayed.

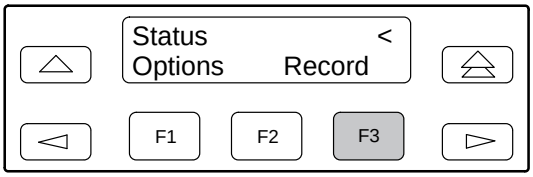
## Record

Record is a troubleshooting tool used by the end user in conjunction with support personnel. This function allows the end user to retrieve and report any sequence faults to support personnel. A sequence fault is an irregular or unexpected event.

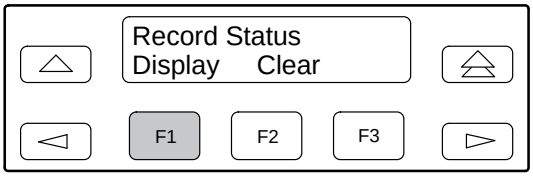
There are two selections under Record: Display and Clear. Display allows up to eight sequence fault messages that have been recorded by the modem to be displayed on the LCD. If no sequence faults have occurred, then **Modem O.K.** appears.

Clear is used to remove all sequence fault messages from nonvolatile memory and the LCD.

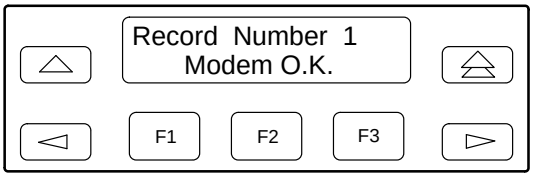
To access Record from the Status branch, make the following selections:




Press the ▻ key until Record appears. Select Record.




To display sequence faults, select Display.




The LCD displays the first sequence fault field. (Sequence fault fields range from 1 to 8 and are identified by a number in the upper right corner.) Press the ▻ key to view the remaining fields. The message **Modem O.K.** appears if no sequence faults have occurred.

To remove sequence fault records from both the LCD and nonvolatile memory, select Clear. The message **Modem O.K.** appears.

To exit this function and remain in the Status branch, press the △ key. To exit and return to the Top-Level menu, press the ⏢ key.

### *AT Command Equivalent*

There is no AT command for Record.

# Test Branch 7

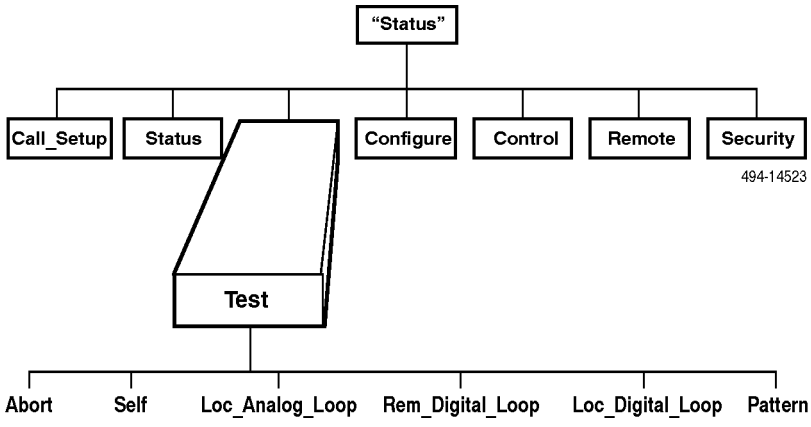

Overview . . . . . 7-1
Test Branch . . . . . 7-2
Abort . . . . . 7-2
Self . . . . . 7-2
Loc Analog Loop . . . . . 7-3
Rem Digital Loop . . . . . 7-4
Loc Digital Loop . . . . . 7-5
Pattern . . . . . 7-6


## Overview

The Test branch of the Top-Level menu allows you to initiate various modem tests. Use these tests if you are having data communication problems, such as periodic character loss, random errors, or constant format errors. By the process of elimination, you can usually isolate the fault in your system.

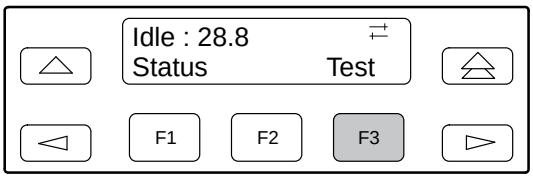
There are six selections under Test: Abort, Self (Self-Test), Loc Analog Loop (Local Analog Loopback), Rem Digital Loop (Remote Digital Loopback), Loc Digital Loop (Local Digital Loopback), and Pattern. The only tests that can operate concurrently are Pattern with a Local Analog Loopback and Pattern with a Remote Digital Loopback. If any test is operating, besides the two combinations just mentioned, it must be canceled before starting another test.

The Test branch only initiates and cancels tests. If any parameters need to be set, refer to the *Tests* section discussed in Chapter 7, *Configure Branch*.



# Test Branch

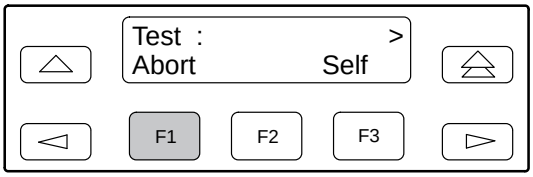
To access the Test branch from the Top-Level menu, make the following selections:



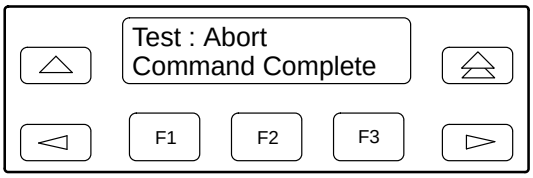

Press the ▻ key until Test appears. Select Test.

## Abort

Abort ends any test that is in progress and brings the modem back to the normal mode of operation. Confirmation is provided by the **Command Complete** message.




Select Abort.




The modem stops all tests currently in progress and displays the **Command Complete** status message on the LCD. To exit this function and remain in the Test branch, press the △ key. To exit and return to the Top-Level menu, press the ⏢ key.

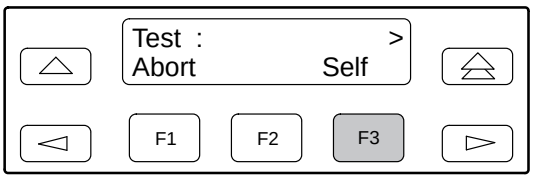
### *AT Command Equivalent*

The AT command is &T0.

## Self

Self performs an internal self-test of the modem, which takes less than a minute to complete. The modem must be offline (not connected with another modem), otherwise Invalid Command appears. This test is not valid in Remote mode and does not appear on the LCD of either modem when in Remote mode.

To access Self from the Test branch, make the following selection:




Select Self. (All LCD cells and DCP status indicators light.)

If the modem passes self-test, Pass appears on the LCD. If it fails, **Failed** appears. If the modem fails, contact your service representative.

If **Invalid Command** appears on the LCD, then another test is in progress or the modem is operating on dial lines. Select Abort to clear the current test, or disconnect to clear the dial lines, and then choose Self.

If the modem receives a ring signal during this test, the test is cancelled and the **RI Abort** message appears.

To exit this function and remain in the Test branch, press the △ key. To exit and return to the Top-Level menu, press the ⏢ key.

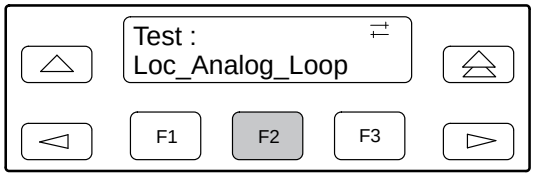
### *AT Command Equivalent*

The AT command is &T9.

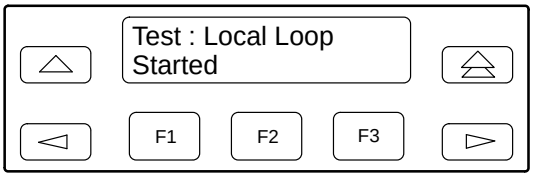
## Loc Analog Loop

Loc Analog Loop performs a local analog loopback (CCITT V.54 Loop 3), Figure 7-1, that verifies modem operation as well as the connection between the DTE and modem. The modem must be offline and in synchronous or asynchronous Direct mode to perform this test, otherwise **Invalid Command** appears.

To access Loc Analog Loop from the Test branch, make the following selections:




Press the ▻ key until Loc Analog Loop appears. Press any function key to start this test.




The message **Started** appears on the LCD, and the Test LED lights for the duration of the test.

If the Test Timeout configuration option is enabled, **Test Timeout** appears at the conclusion of the test. If it is disabled, the test operates until aborted. For more information on the Test Timeout configuration option, refer to the *Tests* section in Chapter 7, *Configure Branch*.

A Ring Indicate during this test can cause errors.

To exit this function and remain in the Test branch, press the △ key. To exit and return to the Top-Level menu, press the ⏫ key.

### *AT Command Equivalent*

The AT command for Local Analog Loopback is &T1.

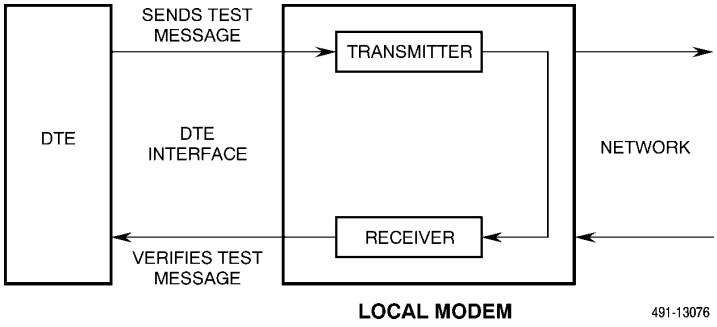
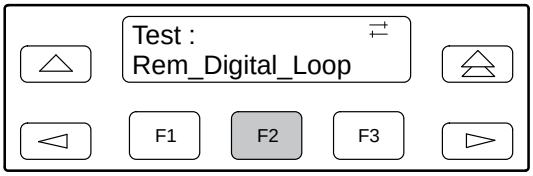



**Figure 7-1. Local Analog Loopback**

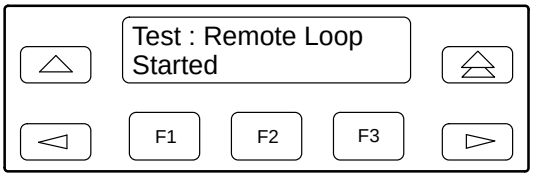
## Rem Digital Loop

Rem Digital Loop performs a remote digital loopback (CCITT V.54 Loop 2), Figure 7-2. This test can verify the integrity of the local modem, the communications link, and the remote modem. Any data or pattern entered at the local DTE is sent to and returned from the remote modem. For this test to operate properly, the modems must be online and in Synchronous or Asynchronous Direct mode and, if set for V.34 modulation, must not be in Asymmetric Rate mode.

To access Rem Digital Loop from the Test branch, make the following selections:




Press the ▻ key until Rem Digital Loop appears. Press any function key to start this test.




The message **Started** appears on the LCD, and the Test LED lights for the duration of the test.

If the Test Timeout configuration option is enabled, **Test Timeout** appears at the conclusion of the test. If it is disabled, the test operates until aborted. For more information on the Test Timeout configuration option, refer to the *Tests* section in Chapter 7.

To exit this function and remain in the Test branch, press the △ key. To exit and return to the Top-Level menu, press the ⏫ key.

### *AT Command Equivalent*

The AT command for Remote Loopback is &T6.

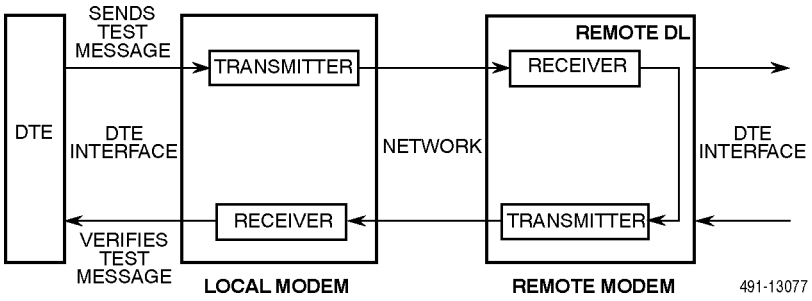
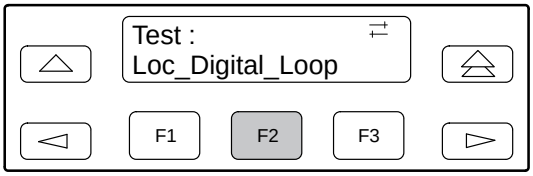



**Figure 7-2. Remote Digital Loopback**

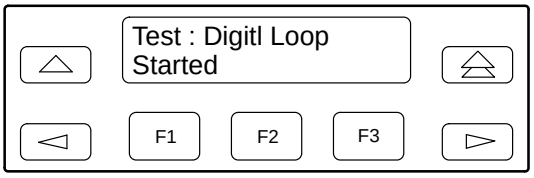
## Loc Digital Loop

Loc Digital Loop is issued by a local modem and forces it to loopback any data received from the remote modem (Figure 7-3). (This test operates the same as a CCITT V.54 Loop 2 except it is issued at your modem.) This is useful if a remote modem is incapable of initiating a remote digital loopback from its location. For this test to operate properly, the modems must be online and in Synchronous or Asynchronous Direct mode and, if set for V.34 modulation, must not be in Asymmetric Rate mode.

To access Loc Digital Loop from the Test branch, make the following selections:




Press the ▻ key until Loc Digital Loop appears. Press any function key to start this test.




The message **Started** appears on the LCD and the Test LED lights.

If the message **Invalid Command** appears on the LCD, then another test is in progress. Select Abort to clear the current test and then select Loc Digital Loop.

If the Test Timeout configuration option is enabled, Test Timeout appears at the conclusion of the LCD. If it is disabled, the test operates until aborted. For more information on the Test Timeout configuration option, refer to the *Tests* section in Chapter 7.

To exit this function and remain in the Test branch, press the △ key. To exit and return to the Top-Level menu, press the ⏫ key.

### *AT Command Equivalent*

The AT command for Local Digital Loopback is &T3.

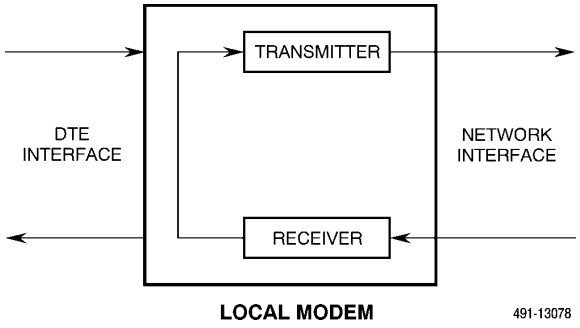



**Figure 7-3. Local Digital Loopback**

## Pattern

Pattern can transmit and receive a 511 bit error rate test pattern. It can also be used with a local analog loopback or a remote digital loopback to simulate data passing through the modem. For this test to operate properly, the modems must be online and in Synchronous or Asynchronous Direct mode. Otherwise, the message **Invalid:Bffr Mde** appears when this test is started. (See Figures 7-4 through 7-6.)

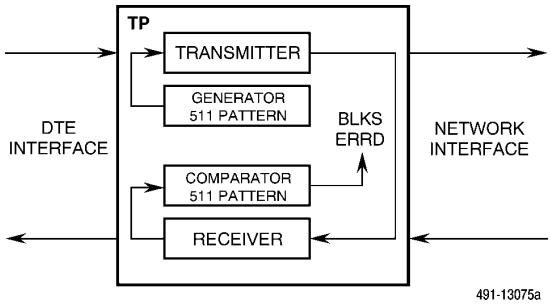



**Figure 7-4. Pattern Test and Local Analog Loopback Test**

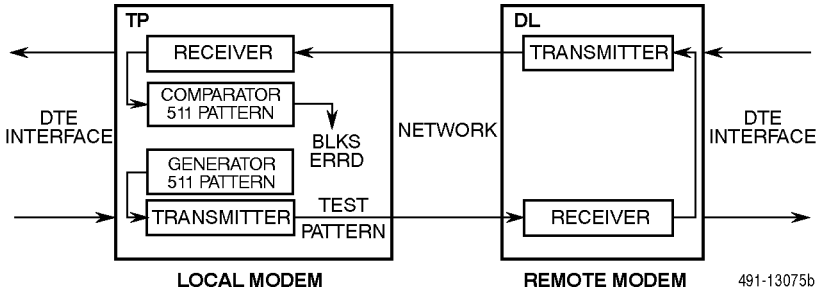



**Figure 7-5. Pattern Test and Remote Digital Loopback Test**

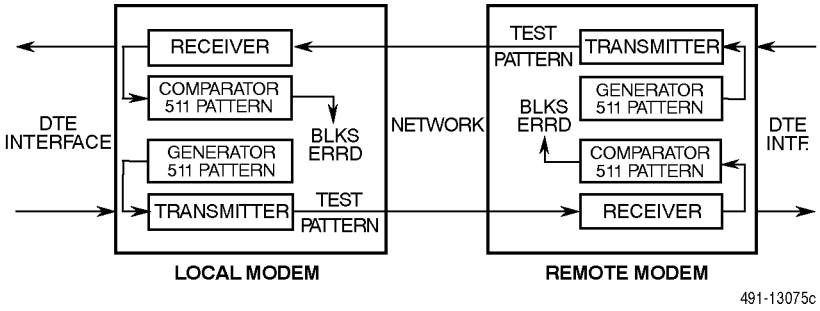
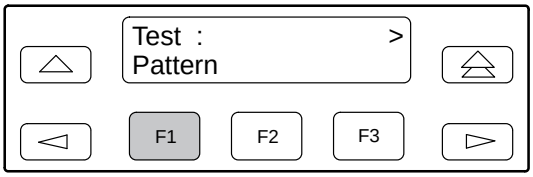
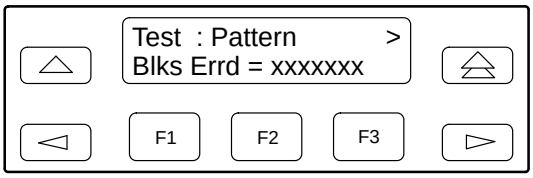



**Figure 7-6. End-to-End Pattern Test**

To access Pattern from the Test branch, make the following selections:




Press the ▻ key until Pattern appears. Select Pattern to start this test.




**BlksErrd=xxxxxxx** displays the number of blocks of data found in error (block size is 1000 bits per block). The message **NoSync** can appear as a value for BlksErrd while the modem's receiver is synchronizing. The message **OvrFlw** can appear as the value for BlksErrd if the counter overflows.

Press the ▻ key to display **BlksRcvd=xxxxxxx**, number of blocks of data received.

The Pattern test can be exited and reentered without restarting the test. The BlksErrd and BlksRcvd continue counting.

If the Test Timeout configuration option is enabled, **Test Timeout** appears at the conclusion of the test. If it is disabled, the test operates until aborted. For more information on the Test Timeout configuration option, refer to the *Tests* section of Chapter 7, *Configure Branch*.

To exit this function and remain in the Test branch, press the △ key. To exit and return to the Top-Level menu, press the ⏢ key.

## *AT Command Equivalent*

The AT command for Pattern is &T2.

# Configure Branch 8


Overview . . . . . 8-1
Configure Branch . . . . . 8-4
Editing and Saving a Configuration Option . . . . . 8-5
Summary . . . . . 8-6
Configuration Tables . . . . . 8-7
DTE Interfaces . . . . . 8-7
DTE Dialer . . . . . 8-14
Line Dialer . . . . . 8-19
Dial Line . . . . . 8-23
Leased Line . . . . . 8-27
V.42/MNP/Buffer . . . . . 8-31
Test . . . . . 8-37
Misc . . . . . 8-39
Security Configuration Options . . . . . 8-42


## Overview

After installing a 3800*Plus* modem, you set its software configuration options using either the diagnostic control panel (DCP) or the AT command set. This chapter describes how to access and use the Configure branch of the Top-Level menu via the DCP.

The Configure branch accesses the Edit Area which is a work space where you view and change any configuration options (straps). These configuration options are loaded to the Edit Area from one of five configuration option areas: Active (Operating), Active (Saved), Customer 1, Customer 2, or Factory.

- **Active (Operating)** is a configuration area containing configuration options currently used by the modem. When the modem is powered on or when a save is performed, the contents of Active (Saved) are loaded into Active (Operating). Any changes made using AT commands directly affect this configuration area.
- **Active (Saved)** is a read from and write to configuration option area containing the most recently saved changes made to any configuration options. In the event of power loss or reset, the modem retrieves these settings from nonvolatile memory.
- **Customer 1** and **Customer 2** are two additional read and write (changeable) configuration areas where you can create and store additional configurations for specific applications.
- **Factory** is a read-only (unchangeable) configuration area containing sets of predefined configuration options for **Async Dial, Sync Dial, Sync Leased (Answer/Originate)**, **UNIX Dial**, **Cellular (Mobile)**, and **Cellular (PSTN)**. These sets contain the most commonly used configuration options for modems installed in these hardware environments, and give you a head start in configuring your modem. Factory default settings are listed in Appendix G.

**NOTE**

If you are using AT commands, a period of time can exist in which the contents of Active (Operating) and Active (Saved) differ. Once you issue an AT&W0 (write) command, however, the two storage areas are identical.

Figures 8-1 and 8-2 graphically display the interaction between the edit area and configuration areas as viewed from the perspective of the DCP and the AT command set.

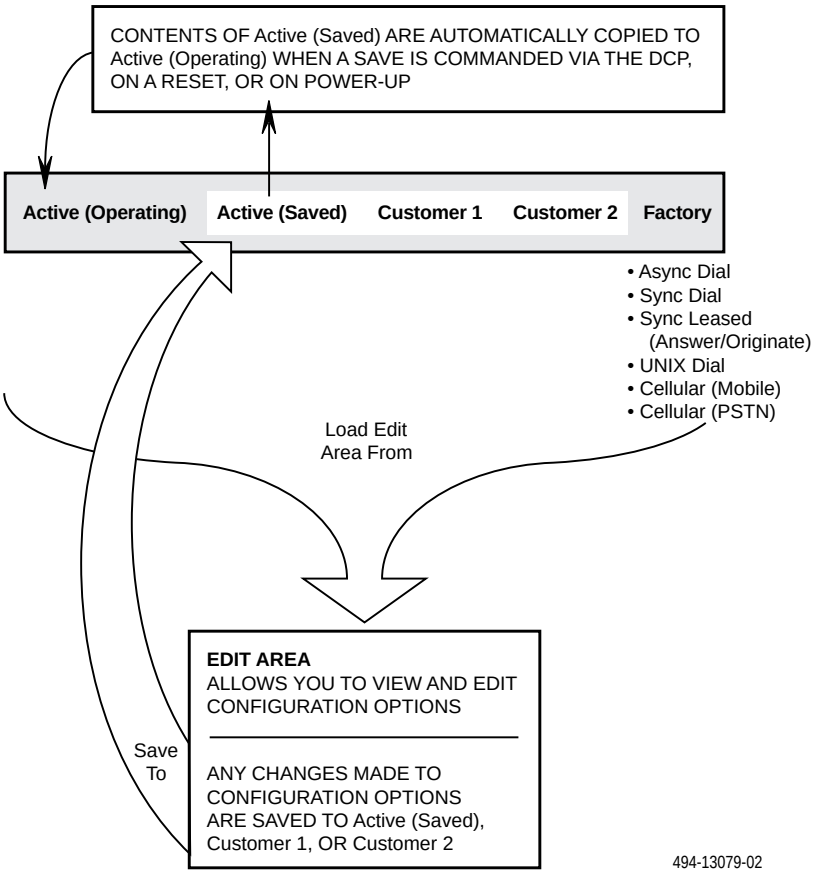

CONTENTS OF Active (Saved) ARE AUTOMATICALLY COPIED TO Active (Operating) WHEN A SAVE IS COMMANDED VIA THE DCP, ON A RESET, OR ON POWER-UP
Active (Operating)
Active (Saved)
Customer 1
Customer 2
Factory
• Async Dial
• Sync Dial
• Sync Leased (Answer/Originate)
• UNIX Dial
• Cellular (Mobile)
• Cellular (PSTN)
Load Edit Area From
EDIT AREA
ALLOWS YOU TO VIEW AND EDIT CONFIGURATION OPTIONS
Save To
ANY CHANGES MADE TO CONFIGURATION OPTIONS ARE SAVED TO Active (Saved), Customer 1, OR Customer 2
494-13079-02

**Figure 8-1. DCP Configuration Process**

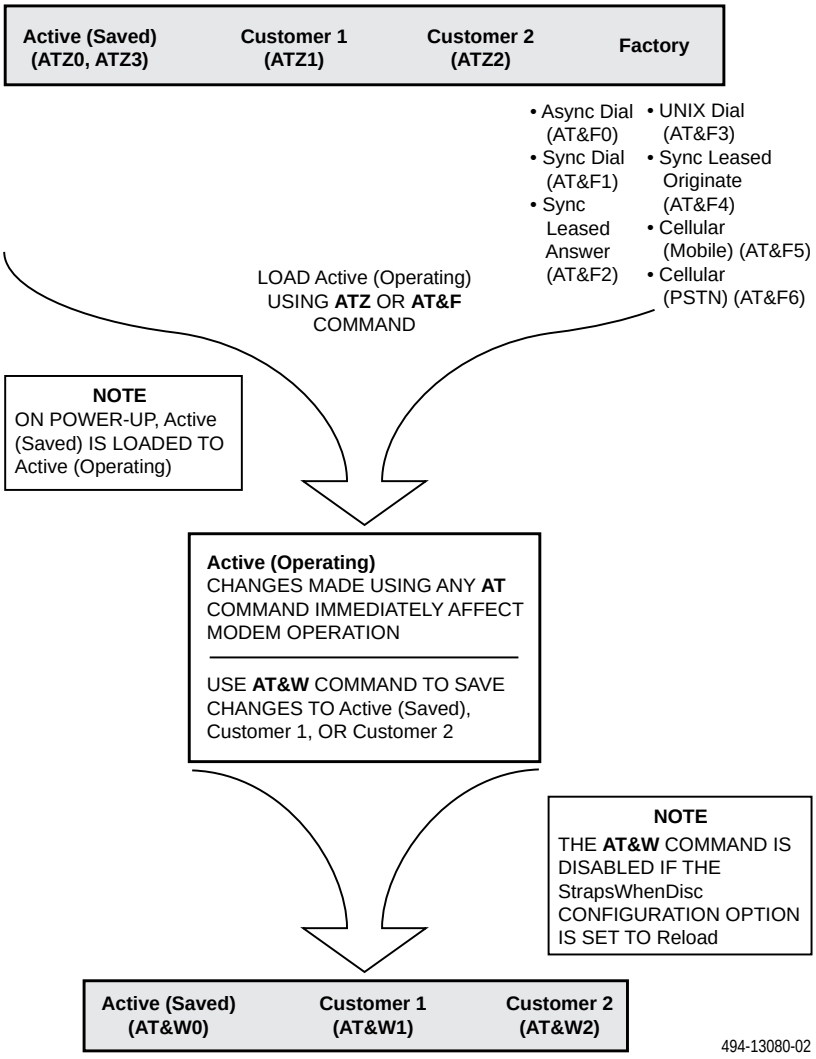

Active (Saved) (ATZ0, ATZ3)
Customer 1 (ATZ1)
Customer 2 (ATZ2)
Factory
• Async Dial (AT&F0)
• Sync Dial (AT&F1)
• Sync Leased Answer (AT&F2)
• UNIX Dial (AT&F3)
• Sync Leased Originate (AT&F4)
• Cellular (Mobile) (AT&F5)
• Cellular (PSTN) (AT&F6)
LOAD Active (Operating) USING ATZ OR AT&F COMMAND
NOTE
ON POWER-UP, Active (Saved) IS LOADED TO Active (Operating)
Active (Operating)
CHANGES MADE USING ANY AT COMMAND IMMEDIATELY AFFECT MODEM OPERATION
USE AT&W COMMAND TO SAVE CHANGES TO Active (Saved), Customer 1, OR Customer 2
NOTE
THE AT&W COMMAND IS DISABLED IF THE StrapsWhenDisc CONFIGURATION OPTION IS SET TO Reload
Active (Saved) (AT&W0)
Customer 1 (AT&W1)
Customer 2 (AT&W2)
494-13080-02

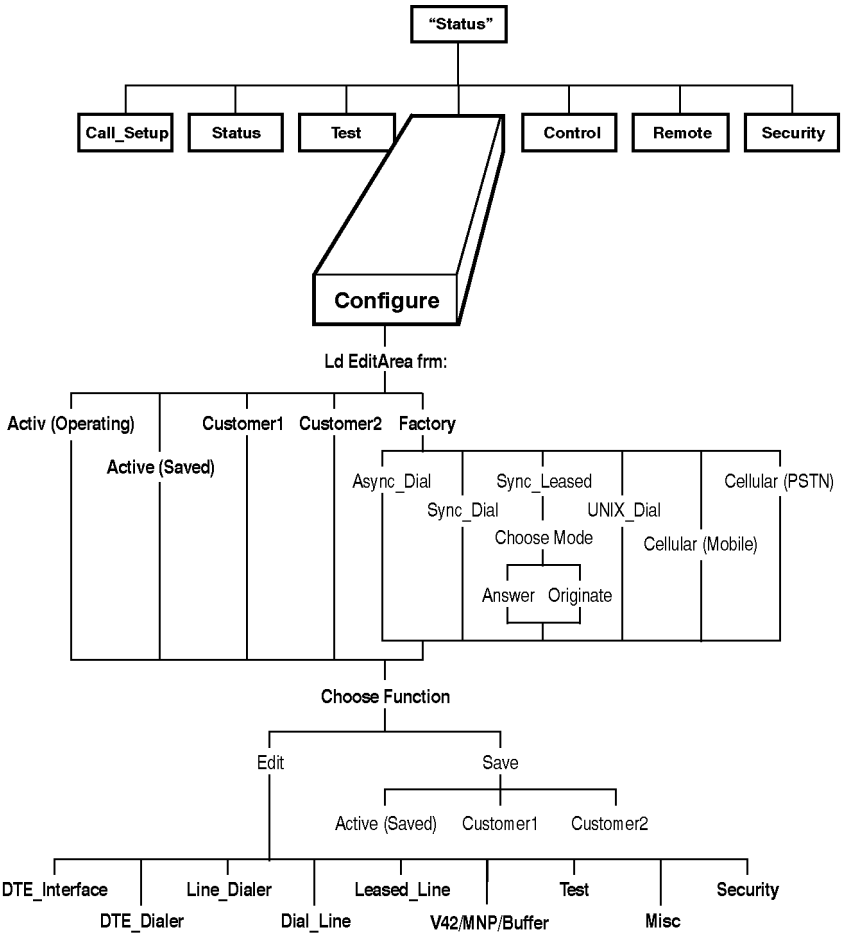
**Figure 8-2. AT Command Configuration Process**

# Configure Branch

The Configure branch of the Top-Level menu contains all of the modem's configuration options (straps) which determine how the modem operates. These configuration options are accessed by scrolling down and across various levels of the Configure branch.

The Configure branch consists of the following three levels:

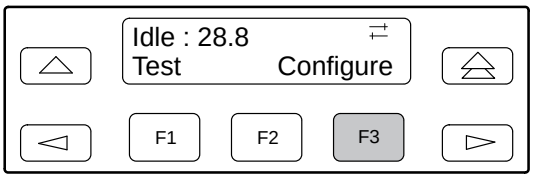
- **Ld EditArea frm.** Allows the selection of the Active (Operating), Active (Saved), Customer 1, Customer 2, and Factory configuration areas.
- **Choose Function.** Allows you to make changes (Edit) to existing configuration options or write (Save) these changes to either the Active (Saved), Customer 1, or Customer 2 configuration area.
- **Edit Strap Group.** Contains the eight software configuration option groups that determine how the modem operates.



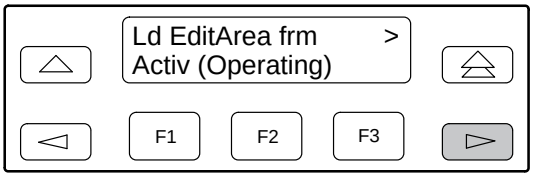

494-14524

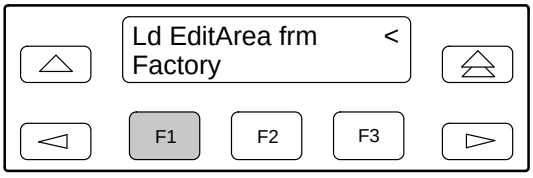
## Editing and Saving a Configuration Option

The following example shows how to change the Remote Access Password using the DCP. (If you ever intend to access another 3800*Plus* Series modem via the Remote branch of the Top-Level menu, the Remote Access Password must be the same for both modems.) By following these procedures you learn how to load a factory preset configuration area (in this case, Async Dial), how to edit a configuration option (Remote Access Password), and how to save changes to a configuration area (Active (Saved)). The shaded key indicates what key to press.

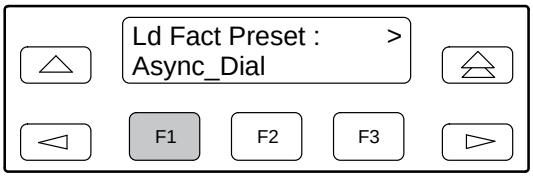



Select Configure from the Top-Level menu.

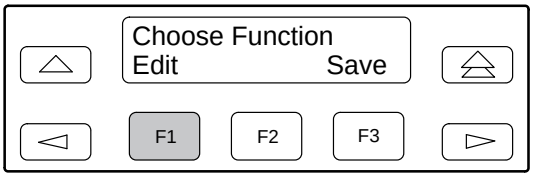


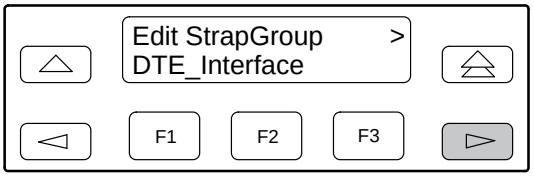

Select the Factory configuration area.



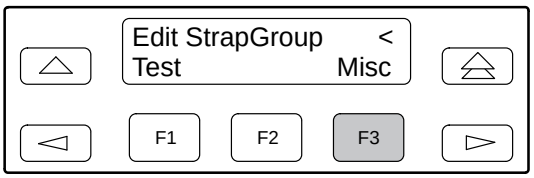

Select Async_Dial.

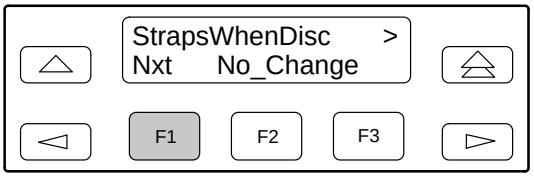



Select Edit.

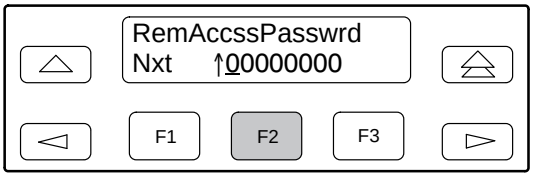



Scroll to and select the Misc configuration options group.

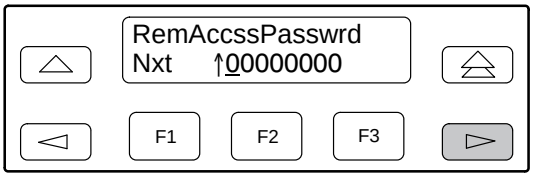


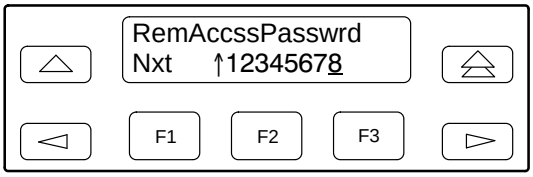

Select Nxt until RemAccssPasswrd appears.




Select the F2 (↑) key to increment password values.

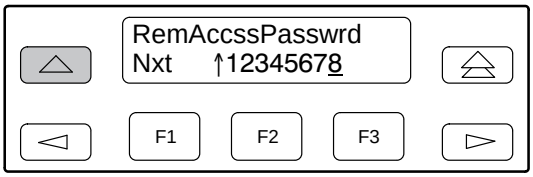



Press the ▻ key to move the cursor to the next position.

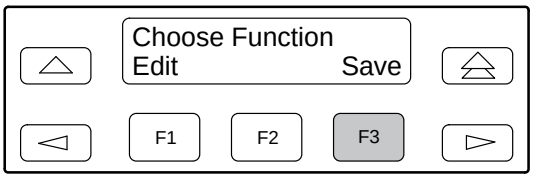



Continue this sequence until you have entered the new password value.

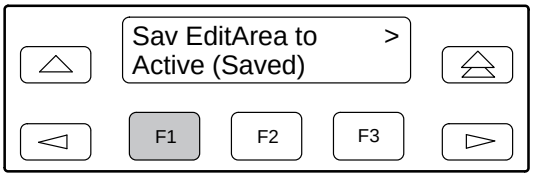
To save the new password to a configuration area, make the following selections.




Press the △ key to scroll up (twice).




Select Save.




Select a configuration area (Active (Saved), Customer 1, or Customer 2) by using the ▻ key. Press F1 or F2 to save the changes.

Select the ⏢ key to exit to the Top-Level menu or select the △ key to remain in the Configure branch.

## Summary

When using the DCP to edit configuration options, keep the following in mind:

- **Nxt** has two functions. First, it indicates that more configuration options are available within that group. These are accessed by selecting Nxt (pressing F1) and scrolling down to the next configuration option. Second, it indicates that what is displayed on the LCD is the current setting. If you scroll left or right, Nxt disappears and reappears if a new value is selected.
- **End** appears when you have scrolled down to the last configuration option available in that group. Selecting End returns you to the top of the configuration group. You are free to enter that group again or scroll left or right to the next configuration options group.
- The △ key takes you one step up in the Configure branch each time it is pressed.
- The ⏢ key causes you to exit the Configure branch and return to the Top-Level menu. If any changes are made to configuration options, the DCP allows you to save these changes to either the Active (Saved), Customer 1, or Customer 2 configuration areas.
- The ◅ and ▻ keys move selections across the LCD.
- The function keys (F1, F2, F3) select the LCD choice that appears above that function key.

# Configuration Tables

The modem's configuration options are arranged into eight groups based upon functionality: DTE Interface (Table 8-1), DTE Dialer (Table 8-2), Line Dialer (Table 8-3), Dial Line (Table 8-4), Leased Line (Table 8-5), V.42/MNP/Buffer (Table 8-6), Tests (Table 8-7), and Misc (Table 8-8).

Throughout these tables, two selections frequently appear on the LCD: Enable and Disable. Unless otherwise stated, Enable selects a configuration option and makes it available for use; Disable makes a configuration option unavailable for use.

The remainder of this chapter discusses each configuration options group in detail, listing factory defaults, definitions, and AT command equivalents.

## DTE Interface

The DTE Interface configuration options contain RS-232D (CCITT V.24) and asynchronous character format information essential for maintaining a connection and for transmitting data between the DTE and the modem.

Table 8-1 shows each DTE Interface configuration option as it appears on the LCD, with the Async Dial factory default setting (the default value if the modem is just being installed) shown following the colon (:) on the first line and with all available selections listed on the second line. Following this is a description of the configuration option, a description of the available selections, and any equivalent AT commands.

**Table 8-1**
**(1 of 7)**
**DTE Interface Configuration Options**

| |
|---|
| **Async/Sync Mode: Async**<br>**Nxt Async Sync** |
| Asynchronous/Synchronous Mode. Determines whether the modem operates in Asynchronous mode or Synchronous mode. If the AT command set is enabled and this configuration option is set for Sync, then the modem operates in Async mode when offline.<br>For Async Dial and UNIX Dial, Async is the factory default. For Sync Dial and Sync Leased, Sync is the factory default.<br>AT command equivalents are &M*n* and &Q*n*. |
| ***Async DTE Rate:19200**<br>**Nxt 19200 115200 76800 57600 38400 14400 12000 9600 7200 4800 2400 1200 0–300** |
| Asynchronous DTE Data Rate. Identifies the asynchronous DTE's operating rate to the modem. Data rates from 115,200 bps to 300 bps are supported.<br>To originate calls in 76,800 bps Sun Workstation® environments, use either DCP dialing, DTR dialing, or handset dialing. The modem does not support AT command dialing at this data rate.<br>To prevent losing data in 115,200 bps applications, a 16650 (or faster) UART on the PC's serial port is required, as well as a communications package which can take advantage of its 16-byte buffer. In addition, a 386 25-MHz (or faster) PC is required, and the RS-232 cable must be 6 feet or less to minimize capacitance.<br>**NOTE:** This configuration option is ignored in Async Direct mode and synchronous mode since the DTE rate always equals the VF rate.<br>The factory default is 19200 bps.<br>There is no AT command equivalent; AT prefix determines Async DTE Rate. |
| * This configuration option only appears if Async/Sync Mode is configured for Async. |

**Table 8-1**
**(2 of 7)**
**DTE Interface Configuration Options**

***Async #Data Bits: 8**
**Nxt 8 7 9(DirectMde) 6(DirectMde)**

Asynchronous Number of Data Bits. Determines if the asynchronous data length is composed of 6, 7, 8, or 9 data bits. This data length excludes start, parity, and stop bits.

**8** – Sets data length to 8 data bits. Sets data length to 8 data bits. Sets data length to 8 data bits.

**7** – Sets data length to 7 data bits.

**9(DirectMode)** – Sets data length to 9 data bits. Only valid when Error Control configuration option is set to Direct Mode.

**6(DirectMode)** – Sets data length to 6 data bits. Only valid when Error Control configuration option is set to Direct Mode.

The factory default is 8 data bits.

**NOTE:** If the DTE Dialer Type configuration option is set for AT or V.25bis Async, then the total character size must equal 10 bits (see DTE Dialer configuration options group). Total character size consists of an asynchronous start bit, asynchronous number of data bits, parity bits, and asynchronous stop bits. V.25bis Async must use 7 data bits with even parity and 1 stop bit. The total character size for Error Control mode or Buffer mode must be 10 bits or less. The total character size for Direct mode must be 11 bits or less.

There is no AT command equivalent; AT prefix determines the async character length.

***Asyn Parity Bit: None**
**Nxt None Even Odd Mark Space**

Asynchronous Parity Bit. Determines type of asynchronous parity bit. The parity of the DTE must match the parity of the modem. Parity options include None, Even, Odd, Mark, or Space.

**None** – No parity bit is used.

**Even** – Parity bit is set so that total number of 1's in data bits plus parity bit is even.

**Odd** – Parity bit is set so that total number of 1's in data bits plus parity bit is odd.

**Mark** – Parity bit is always set to 1. Only valid if Async #Data Bits configuration option is set to 7.

**Space** – Parity bit is always set to 0. Only valid if Async #Data Bits configuration option is set to 7.

The factory default is None.

**NOTE:** If the DTE Dialer Type configuration option is set for AT or V.25bis Async, then the total character size must equal 10 bits (see DTE Dialer configuration options group). Total character size consists of an asynchronous start bit, asynchronous number of data bits, parity bits, and asynchronous stop bits. V.25bis Async must use 7 data bits with even parity and 1 stop bit. The total character size for Error Control mode or Buffer mode must be 10 bits or less. The total character size for Direct mode must be 11 bits or less.

There is no AT command equivalent; AT prefix determines parity of the async character.

***Asyn #Stop Bits: 1**
**Nxt 1 2**

Asynchronous Number of Stop Bits. Selects 1 or 2 bits to signal the end of an asynchronous character.

The factory default is 1.

**NOTE:** If the DTE Dialer Type configuration option is set for AT or V.25bis Async, then the total character size must equal 10 bits (see DTE Dialer configuration options group). Total character size consists of an asynchronous start bit, asynchronous number of data bits, parity bits, and asynchronous stop bits. V.25bis Async must use 7 data bits with even parity and 1 stop bit. The total character size for Error Control mode or Buffer mode must be 10 bits or less. The total character size for Direct mode must be 11 bits or less.

There is no AT command equivalent; AT prefix determines the number of stop bits via autobauding.

* This configuration option only appears if Async/Sync Mode is configured for Async.

**Table 8-1**
**(3 of 7)**
**DTE Interface Configuration Options**

**DTR Action: Ignore**
**Nxt Stndrd_RS232 Ignore CntrlsOnHook Off=ReloadStrp Off=CmdMode**

Data Terminal Ready Action. DTR is a signal from the DTE to the modem indicating that the DTE is connected and ready for operation.

**Standard RS232** – Allows the DTE to control DTR to the modem as specified in RS-232D and CCITT V.24 specifications. If this signal is not present, the modem will not answer or dial.

**Ignore** – Modem assumes DTR is always ON. This is used when DTE does not provide DTR to the modem.

**CntrlsOnHook** – Modem does not disconnect from the VF line during an active call until DTR is lowered by the attached DTE. This setting is required for applications in which the host processor must reset itself for the next session before the current session is terminated. The setting is ignored if the modem receives a disconnect command from the DCP or from the COMSPHERE 6700 Series NMS.

**Off=ReloadStrp** – Like Standard RS232, except that when DTR is lowered the modem loads the Active (Saved) area into the Active (Operating) area.

**Off=CmdMode** – When the modem is online and DTR is Off for longer than the period specified by the S25 register, the modem enters online Command mode. The ATO command must be issued to return to data mode. This setting has the same effect as Ignore if AT commands are disabled.

**NOTE:** If V.25bis mode is used, then this configuration option must be set for Stndrd_RS232. The DTE must provide DTR to dial or answer a call.

When operating over the dial network, this selection forces DTR Action to behave as CT108/2 (Data Terminal Ready). If DTE Dialer Type configuration option is set to DTR=Direct 1, then DTR Action behaves as CT108/1 (Connect Data Set to Line).

For Async Dial, Sync Leased, and UNIX Dial, Ignore is the factory default.

For Sync Dial, Stndrd_RS232 is the factory default.

AT command equivalent is &D*n*.

**Table 8-1**
**(4 of 7)**
**DTE Interface Configuration Options**

**DSR Control: Forced_On**
**Nxt Forced_On Stndrd_RS232 WinkWhenDisc Follows_DTR On_Early Delay_ToData DialBkToggle**

Data Data Set Ready Control. DSR is a signal from the modem to the DTE indicating the modem is connected and ready for operation.

**Forced On** – Forces DSR output ON constantly. This is usually used for leased-line applications and when the DTE requires DSR to always be ON.

**Standard RS232** – Allows the modem to control DSR to the DTE. The modem raises DSR when it begins the handshake process. DSR lowers upon disconnect. The modem is not ready to receive data until DSR, CTS, and LSD are active.

An ON state indicates to the DTE that the modem is ready to receive data. An Off state indicates that the modem is not ready to receive data, and the DTE will not send data to the modem. During a Local Analog Loop and a Remote Digital Loop, DSR is ON.

**Wink When Disconnect** – DSR is normally forced ON, but is turned Off for 1 to 2 seconds upon a disconnect.

**Follows DTR** – When the modem receives DTR from the DTE, it sends DSR to the DTE.

**On Early** – DSR is low when the modem is in the idle state. DSR goes high immediately upon a command to enter Data mode. This setting is required for some modem pooling applications.

**Delay to Data** – Operation is similar to the Standard RS232 setting except that DSR does not turn ON until the modem enters Data mode. Normally, the modem raises DSR when it begins the handshaking process.

Use this setting when the DTE cannot operate with a long DSR-to-CTS delay (common for V.32bis modulation) or when dial access security is enabled and requires a DTE-side password entry. Often, the DTE cannot accept the long delay between DSR and CTS turning ON due to the remote user entering the DTE-side password.

**Dial Backup Toggle** – DSR is turned Off during a dial backup attempt in Leased mode, and ON when such an attempt completes. DSR is also turned Off when a disconnect begins, and turned ON when the disconnect is complete.

For Async Dial and UNIX Dial, Forced_On is the factory default.

For Sync Dial and Sync Leased, Stndrd_RS232 is the factory default.

AT command equivalent is &S*n*.

**Table 8-1**
**(5 of 7)**
**DTE Interface Configuration Options**

**RTS Action: Ignore**
**Nxt Ignore Stndrd_RS232 Sim_Cntl_Car Cntl_Car**

Request-to-Send Action. RTS is a signal from the DTE to the modem indicating the DTE has data to send to the modem.

**Ignore** – Modem assumes RTS is always ON. Use this selection when the DTE does not provide RTS to the modem.

**Standard RS232** – Allows the DTE to control RTS to the modem in normal RS-232D operation. RTS must be ON for the DTE to transmit to the modem.

**Simulated Control Carrier** – RTS input controls the remote modem's LSD signal. This is used for DTEs that require Line Signal Detect (LSD) to toggle ON and Off to simulate half-duplex operation. Valid only in Synchronous mode and Asynchronous Direct mode.

**NOTE:** If RTS Action is set for simulated control carrier, then the remote modem's LSD Control configuration option must be set for Simulated Control Carrier. Simulated Control Carrier conforms to V.13 specifications. This setting is ignored when the modem is configured for Asynchronous mode and RTS/CTS flow control is selected.

**Control Carrier** – Allows the DTE's RTS signal to control the modem's carrier signal. When RTS is ON, carrier is present on the VF line. When RTS turns Off, carrier is no longer present. This is only valid for V.29 leased-line modulation.

For Async Dial and UNIX Dial, Ignore is the factory default.

For Sync Dial and Sync Leased, Stndrd_RS232 is the factory default.

AT command equivalent is &R*n*.

**CTS Control: Forced_On**
**Nxt Forced_On Stndrd_RS232 WinkWhenDisc Follows_DTR**

Clear-to-Send Control. CTS is a signal from the modem to the DTE indicating that it can accept data from the DTE.

**NOTE:** When CTS flow control or CTS/RTS flow control is enabled, CTS will turn ON and Off regardless of the setting of CTS Control.

**Forced On** – CTS is forced ON at all times. Use this selection for most asynchronous applications.

**Standard RS232** – In Synchronous mode, forces the state of CTS to follow the state of RTS in normal RS-232D operation. The minimum time that elapses between CTS and RTS is determined by the RTS/CTS Delay configuration option. Use this setting for most synchronous applications.

In AT Command mode, CTS (which is ON in Idle mode) goes Off just prior to DSR going active, and goes ON when the modem enters Data mode. This operation prevents losing data in applications which begin transmitting as soon as DSR and CTS are both active.

**Wink When Disconnect** – CTS is normally forced ON, but is turned Off for 1 to 2 seconds upon a disconnect. Use this for most UNIX® applications.

**Follows DTR** – The state of CTS follows the state of DTR. When DTR turns ON, CTS turns ON. When DTR turns Off, CTS turns Off.

For Async Dial, Forced On is the factory default.

For Sync Dial and Sync Leased, Stndrd_RS232 is the factory default.

For UNIX Dial, WinkWhenDisc is the factory default.

AT command equivalent is \D*n*.

**Table 8-1**
**(6 of 7)**
**DTE Interface Configuration Options**

**RTS/CTS Delay: 0 msec**
**Nxt 0msec 10msec 50msec 150msec 600msec**

Request-to-Send/Clear-to-Send Delay. RTS/CTS Delay sets the delay time between the modem receiving RTS from the DTE and the modem sending CTS to the DTE.

This delay is only valid in Async Direct mode and synchronous applications when it is necessary to have a short delay between the time the DTE raises RTS and the time the modem presents CTS to allow the DTE to send data.

**NOTE:** For this configuration option to be valid, both the RTS Action and the CTS Control configuration options must be set for Stndrd RS232. If RTS Action is set for Ignore, RTS is always ON and this configuration option has no effect.

The factory default is 0 milliseconds.

AT command equivalent is S-register S26=*n*.

**LSD Control: Stndrd_RS232**
**Nxt Stndrd_RS232 Forced_On WinkWhenDisc Follows_DTR Sim_Cntl_Car =DTR/DiscOff BridgeRetrain**

Line Signal Detect Control. LSD is a signal indicating that the carrier signal is being received from the remote modem. It is normally turned Off to the DTE when the power level of the received carrier signal drops below the carrier detect threshold.

**Standard RS232** – LSD is ON when the modem detects the remote modem's carrier signal. LSD turns Off when the carrier signal strength drops below carrier detect threshold.

**Forced On** – Forces LSD to be ON at all times.

**Wink When Disconnect** – LSD is normally forced ON, but can be turned Off for 1 to 2 seconds upon a disconnect. This is used for UNIX® DTEs.

**Follows DTR** – The state of LSD follows the state of DTR. When DTR turns ON, LSD turns ON. When DTR turns Off, LSD turns Off.

**Simulated Control Carrier** – LSD follows the state of RTS of the remote DTE via the V.13 simulated control carrier signaling. This is required for hosts that cannot support full-duplex operation. Valid only in Synchronous mode and Asynchronous Direct mode.

**NOTE:** If LSD Control is set for simulated control carrier, then the RTS Action configuration option on the remote modem must be set for Simulated Control Carrier.

**=DTR/Disconnect Off** – The state of LSD follows the state of DTR except when disconnecting once a connection is established. In this instance, DTR remains ON and LSD turns Off. DTR must then toggle Off and then ON again for LSD to turn ON. This setting is required for AT&T DATAKIT® dial-out applications.

**BridgeRetrain** – LSD behaves as if it were set for Standard RS232, except that it is turned off when a retrain condition lasts longer than 10 seconds, and turned on again when no retrain condition is detected for a period of 10 seconds.

**NOTE:** If LSD Control is set for =DTR/DiscOff, then the DTR Action configuration option must be set for Stndrd_RS232.

For Async Dial, Sync Dial, and Sync Leased, Stndrd_RS232 is the factory default.

For UNIX Dial, WinkWhenDisc is the factory default.

AT command equivalent is &C*n*.

**Table 8-1**
**(7 of 7)**
**DTE Interface Configuration Options**

**TX Clock Source: Internal**
**Nxt Internal External RXC_Loop**

Transmit Clock Source. Determines the source of timing for synchronous data transmitted from the DTE.

**Internal** – The transmit data's clock source is derived from the modem's internal clock and output on Pin 15 (TXC) of the RS-232D interface.

**External** – The transmit data's clock source is provided by the DTE on Pin 24 (EXT) on the RS-232D interface. This configuration option automatically disables Autorate, Automode, and Asymmetric Rate mode when running V.34 modulation.

**RXC Loop** – The modem's transmit clock is derived from its received signal and is output on Pin 15 (TXC) of the RS-232D interface.

**NOTE:** This configuration option only appears if Async/Sync Mode is configured for Sync.

The factory default is Internal.

AT command equivalent is &X*n*.

**CT111_Rate Cntl: Disable**
**Nxt Disable Fallback1 Fallback2**

CT111 Rate Control. Allows the DTE to control modem rate via Pin 23 of the RS-232D interface. This configuration option determines the effect of the DTE Rate control signal. CT111 is also known as CH on the RS-232D interface.

**Disable** – Disregards CT111 Rate Control.

**Fallback1** – Forces the modem to decrease its configured data rate to the next lower data rate when CT111 is Off. Valid only for V.32bis, V.33, V.29 modulation. Modem will only fall back within the same modulation scheme. When CT111 turns ON, the modem returns to its previous data rate.

**Fallback2** – Forces the modem to decrease two data rates while remaining in the same modulation scheme. When CT111 turns ON, the modem returns to its previous data rate.

**NOTE:** This configuration option is only valid in Async Direct mode and Synchronous mode. For proper operation, disable the Autorate and Automode configuration options. CT111 Rate Control is not supported with V.34.

The factory default is Disable.

AT command equivalent is S-register S61=*n*.

**DTE Rate=VF: Disable**
**End Disable Enable**

DTE Rate = VF Rate. Forces the data rate of the connection between the DTE (computer) and the modem to be the same as the VF (telephone line) rate.

**Disable** – The DTE rate is the value of the Async DTE Rate configuration option.

**Enable** – The DTE rate is identical with the VF rate.

The factory default is Disable.

AT command equivalent is S-register S90=*n*.

## DTE Dialer

The DTE Dialer configuration options establish the DTE-to-modem protocol for call establishment and control.

Table 8-2 shows each DTE Dialer configuration option as it appears on the LCD, with the Async Dial factory default setting (the default value if the modem is just being installed) shown following the colon (:) on the first line and with all available selections listed on the second line. Following this is a description of the configuration option, a description of the available selections, and any equivalent AT commands.

**Table 8-2**
**(1 of 5)**
**DTE Dialer Configuration Options**

**DTE Dialer Type: AT**
**Nxt AT Disable V25bis_Async V25bis_Bsync V25bis_HDLC DTR=Dirs AT&T_Exclusv**

Data Terminal Equipment Dialer Type. Identifies to the modem the type of dialing method and protocol used by the DTE.

**AT** – Allows AT command protocol to be used as a method for entering commands and dialing when used in an asynchronous application.

**NOTE:** The modem will not respond to AT commands if DTE Dialer Type is not set for AT.

**Disable** – Disables any type of DTE dialing method. Dialing can only be performed using the DCP's Dial command or attached telephone.

**V.25bis Async** – Selects V.25bis Async as the dialing method and protocol used by the modem. The character length must be 7 data bits with even parity and 1 stop bit.

**V.25bis Bisync** – Selects V.25bis Bisync as the dialing method and protocol used by the modem. This is also known as character-oriented protocol. This framing protocol uses two synchronous control characters and a start-of-text control character before the text block and an end-of-text control character after the text block. The character length must be 7 data bits with odd parity and 1 stop bit.

**V.25bis HDLC** – Selects V.25bis HDLC as the dialing method and protocol used by the modem. This is also known as bit-oriented protocol. This framing protocol uses flag, address and control characters before the text block and a frame sequence check and flag after the text block.

**DTR=Dirs** – Allows the modem to automatically dial the number stored in directory location 1 whenever DTR turns ON.

**NOTE:** DTR dialing should not be used if dial access security is enabled.

**AT&T Exclusive** – Enables a subset of the proprietary AT&T command set, which is required for some applications that use AT&T equipment. Currently, the only application supported is AT&T DATAKIT ™.

For Async Dial and UNIX Dial, AT is the factory default.

For Sync Dial and Sync Leased, Disable is the factory default.

AT command equivalent is &M*n* and &Q*n*.

**Table 8-2**
**(2 of 5)**
**DTE Dialer Configuration Options**

| |
|---|
| ***AT Escape Char: 043 ASCI**<br>**Nxt ↑ 043 ASCI** |
| AT Escape Character. The escape sequence (+++) allows you to move back and forth between Command mode and Data mode. The ASCII value of the escape character (43 ASCII) can be set to any ASCII value from 0 ASCII to 255 ASCII. However, the escape character is disabled if a value greater than 127 ASCII is entered. When disabled, the call must be disconnected to return to Command mode.<br>The factory default is 43 (ASCII AT escape character).<br>AT command equivalent is S-register S2=*n.* |
| ***Escape GuardTim: 1sec**<br>**Nxt 1sec 200msec 400msec 600msec 800msec 2sec** |
| Escape Guard Time. Determines the length of the required pause before and after the escape sequence is issued. The guard time prevents the modem from interpreting data as the escape sequence characters.<br>The factory default is 1 second.<br>AT command equivalent is S-register S12=*n*. |
| ***BreakForceEscap:**<br>**Disable Nxt Disable Enable** |
| Break Forces Escape. Determines whether or not the modem should enter Command mode when it receives a break character from the DTE.<br>**Disable** – A break character is sent to the remote end.<br>**Enable** – Modem escapes into AT Command mode, and a break character is not sent to the remote end.<br>The factory default is Disable.<br>AT command equivalent is \K*n*. |
| ***CommandCharEcho: Enable**<br>**Nxt EnableDisable** |
| Command Character Echo. Controls whether or not characters are echoed back to the DTE when the modem is in Command mode.<br>The factory default is Enable.<br>AT command equivalent is E*n*. |
| ***CarriageRtn Char: 013 ASCI**<br>**Nxt ↑ 013 ASCI** |
| Carriage Return Character. Allows you to change the ASCII character used to terminate an AT command to any ASCII value from 0 to 127.<br>The factory default is 13 (ASCII carriage return).<br>AT command equivalent is S-register S3=*n*. |
| * This configuration option only appears if DTE Dialer Type is configured for AT. |

**Table 8-2**
**(3 of 5)**
**DTE Dialer Configuration Options**

***Backspace Char: 008 ASCI**
**Nxt ↑ 008 ASCI**

Backspace Character. Sets the character used to perform a backspace in Command mode.

The factory default is 08 (ASCII backspace character).

AT command equivalent is S-register S5=*n*.

***Linefeed Char: 010 ASCI**
**Nxt ↑ 010 ASCI**

Line Feed Character. Sets the character used to perform a line feed in Command mode for responses from the modem.

The factory default is 10 (ASCII line feed character).

AT command equivalent is S-register S4=*n*.

***Result Codes: Enable**
**Nxt Enable Disable EnableInOrig**

Result Codes. Result codes are informational messages (such as Connect and Ring) sent from the modem and displayed on the asynchronous DTE terminal. (For a list of Result Codes, refer to Table 11-1 in Chapter 11, *AT Commands and S-registers*.)

**Enable** – Modem sends result codes to the DTE.

**Disable** – Modem does not send result codes to the DTE.

**EnableInOrig** – For UNIX® applications, enable result codes only on the originating modem. This prevents the DTE on the answer side from interpreting result codes as login attempts.

For Async Dial, Enable is the factory default.

For UNIX Dial, EnableInOrig is the factory default.

AT command equivalent is Q*n*.

***ExtendResltCode: Enable**
**Nxt Enable Disable Add/EC Add/V42,MNP Use_DTE_Rate**

Extended Result Codes. Informational messages such as VF data rate and Error Control are displayed with the result codes. (For a list of Extended Result Codes, refer to Table 11-1 in Chapter 11, *AT Commands and S-registers*.)

**Enable** – **NO DIALTONE, BUSY, NO ANSWER**, and **CONNECT xxxx** (xxxx = VF data rate) are displayed along with result codes listed in Table 11-1 in Chapter 11.

**Disable** – Only **OK, CONNECT, RING, NO CARRIER,** and **ERROR** result codes appear.

**NOTE:** NO DIALTONE is valid only if Dial Tone Detect configuration option is enabled. BUSY appears if Busy Detect configuration option is enabled.

**Add/EC** – Places the EC suffix after the result code text if error control is used. For example, CONNECT 9600/EC

**Add/V.42, MNP** – Places either the /V.42 or /MNP suffix after the result code text if data compression is used. For example, CONNECT 9600/V42b.

**Use DTE Rate** – Allows the DTE rate to be displayed in the Connect message instead of the line rate. This feature is required in some modem pooling applications.

The factory default is Enable.

AT command equivalent is X*n*.

* This configuration option only appears if DTE Dialer Type is configured for AT.

**Table 8-2**
**(4 of 5)**
**DTE Dialer Configuration Options**

| |
|---|
| ***ResultCode Form: Words**<br>**Nxt Words Numbers (1) Numbers (2)** |
| Result Codes Format. Controls whether or not result codes appear as words or as numeric codes. Some DTEs do not recognize Result Codes as words; therefore, numbers are required. The Numbers (2) format is required for some modem pooling applications. (For a list of Result Codes, refer to Appendix B.)<br>The factory default is Words.<br>AT command equivalent is V*n*. |
| ***AT Cmnd Mode: Normal**<br>**Nxt Normal No_ERROR NoStrapOrERR** |
| AT Command Mode. Determines how the modem responds to valid and invalid AT commands.<br>**NOTE:** Since this configuration option affects AT commands, it cannot be changed by the AT&F command. However, it can be changed by selecting a factory preset configuration via the DCP.<br>**Normal** – Allows normal operation of the AT command set. The modem acts upon all valid AT commands and issues the ERROR result code for invalid commands. If a string with multiple commands is entered, then an invalid command within that string will prevent the execution of subsequent valid commands.<br>**No ERROR** – Operates similar to Normal mode, however, the modem does not issue an ERROR result code for invalid commands. When an invalid command equivalent is encountered, the modem ignores it and issues the OK result code. If a string with multiple commands is entered, then an invalid command within that string will not prevent the execution of subsequent valid commands.<br>**No Strap or ERROR** – Ignores all AT commands (including valid commands) that cause a configuration option to change. Only nonconfiguring commands (for example ATD, ATA, and ATI) are executed; the ERROR result code is never returned.<br>The factory default is Normal.<br>AT command equivalent is S-register S84=*n* |
| **V25bis Coding: ASCII**<br>**Nxt ASCII EBCDIC** |
| V.25bis Coding. Identifies to the modem whether the DTE is using ASCII code or EBCDIC code for V.25bis commands. The modem responds to the DTE using the same coding.<br>**NOTE:** This configuration option only appears if DTE Dialer is configured for V25bis HDLC or V25bis Bisync.<br>The factory default is ASCII.<br>AT command equivalent is S-register S62=*n.* |
| * This configuration option only appears if DTE Dialer Type is configured for AT. |

**Table 8-2**
**(5 of 5)**
**DTE Dialer Configuration Options**

| |
|---|
| **V25bis IdleFill: Mark**<br>**Nxt Mark Flag** |
| V.25bis Idle Fill. Determines whether a mark or flag is used as an idle fill character for the DTE. The modem responds to the DTE using the same idle fill.<br>**NOTE:** This configuration option only appears if DTE Dialer is configured for V25bis HDLC.<br>The factory default is Mark.<br>AT command equivalent is S-register S63=*n.* |
| **V.25b NewLineChr: CR+LF**<br>**Nxt CR+LF CR LF** |
| V.25bis New Line Character. Sets the modem for the command line terminator used by the DTE in V.25bis Async mode. The modem responds to the DTE using the same line terminator.<br>**NOTE:** This configuration option only appears if DTE Dialer is configured for V25bis Async.<br>The factory default is CR+LF.<br>AT command equivalent is S-register S64=*n.* |
| **DTR Cont Repeat: Disable**<br>**End Disable Enable** |
| DTR Cont Repeat. Determines whether automatic redialing stops after the directory locations defined by DTR Auto Redial (S37) have all been tried unsuccessfully once. If DTR Cont Repeat is enabled, automatic redialing starts again with directory location 1. The default is Disable.<br>A redial attempt is made in response to a bad phone number, a busy signal, no answer, or no quiet answer. However, a lockout from redialing occurs if ten successive failing call attempts are made to the same number.<br>DTR Cont Repeat is accessible only if the DTE Dialer Type is DTR=Dirs.<br>**Disable** – Automatic redialing will not be repeated.<br>**Enable** – Automatic will be repeated if necessary.<br>AT command equivalent is S-register S38=*n.* |

## Line Dialer

The Line Dialer configuration options establish parameters used by the modem to answer or originate calls.

Table 8-3 shows each Line Dialer configuration option as it appears on the LCD, with the Async Dial factory default setting (the default value if the modem is just being installed) shown following the colon (:) on the first line and with all available selections listed on the second line. Following this is a description of the configuration option, a description of the available selections, and any equivalent AT commands.

**Table 8-3**
**(1 of 4)**
**Line Dialer Configuration Options**

| |
|---|
| **AutoAnswerRing#: 1**<br>**Nxt 1 Disable 2 4 6 8 10** |
| Auto-Answer Ring Count. Determines the number of rings necessary before the answering modem answers an incoming call. For example, if this option is set for 2, then the answering modem answers after the second ring.<br>**NOTE:** Although DCP selections are limited (1, 2, 4, 6, 8, or 10), values set by AT commands can display from 1 to 255 rings.<br>**Disable** – If selected, the modem must be answered using either the DCP's Answer command or via AT commands.<br>The factory default is 1.<br>AT command equivalent is S*n*. |
| **Dialer Type: Tone**<br>**Nxt Tone Pulse** |
| Dialer Type. Selects either tone (DTMF) dialing or pulse (rotary) dialing mode.<br>The factory default is Tone.<br>AT command equivalents are the Dial command modifiers T and P. |
| **DialTone Detect: Enable**<br>**Nxt Enable Disable** |
| Dial Tone Detect. Sets the modem for dial tone detection (enable) or blind dialing (disable).<br>**Enable** – Modem disconnects the call if a dial tone is not detected within 10 seconds and displays **No Dial Tone** on both the LCD and asynchronous DTE terminal.<br>**Disable** – Modem dials a call whether or not it detects a dial tone on the line. This is known as blind dialing. The period of time the modem waits before dialing is specified in the Blind Dial Pause configuration option.<br>The factory default is Enable.<br>AT command equivalent is X*n*. |
| **Blind Dial Paus: 2sec**<br>**Nxt 2sec 4sec 6sec 8sec 10sec 20sec** |
| Blind Dial Pause. Determines how long the modem waits before dialing a telephone number when DialTone Detect is disabled.<br>**NOTE:** The Blind Dial Pause configuration option only appears when the Dial Tone Detect configuration option is disabled.<br>The factory default is 2sec.<br>AT command equivalent is S-register S6=*n*. |

**Table 8-3**
**(2 of 4)**
**Line Dialer Configuration Options**

**BusyTone Detect: Enable**
**Nxt Enable Disable**

Busy Tone Detect. Sets the modem to monitor for Busy Tone (Enable) or ignore Busy Tone (Disable).

This configuration option is normally enabled; however, if the modem receives false busy tones, this configuration option can be disabled and the modem ignores all busy tones.

The factory default is Enable.

AT command equivalent is X*n*.

**“,” Pause Time: 2sec**
**Nxt 2sec 4sec 6sec 8sec 10sec 20sec**

Pause Time. Determines the number of seconds the modem pauses when it encounters a comma (,) in the dial command string.

**NOTE:** Although DCP selections are limited (2, 4, 6, 8, 10, or 20), values set by the AT commands can display from 0 to 255 seconds.

The factory default is 2sec.

AT command equivalent is S-register S8=*n*.

**NoAnswer Timout: 45sec**
**Nxt 45sec 30sec 60sec 120sec**

No Answer Abort Time-out. Determines the number of seconds an originating modem waits before abandoning a call attempt when no answer tone is received.

**NOTE:** Although DCP selections are limited (30, 45, 60, or 120), values set by AT commands can display from 1 to 255 seconds.

The factory default is 45sec.

AT command equivalent is S-register S7=*n*.

**Fast Disconnect: Disable**
**Nxt Disable Enable**

Fast Disconnect. Allows the modem to disconnect immediately after receiving a disconnect command from a local DTE or its own diagnostic control panel.

**Disable** – The modem follows its normal disconnect sequence by issuing a cleardown sequence or long space disconnect. This is also known as a graceful disconnect since the other modem receives advance notice of a disconnection.

**Enable** – Use this setting if the DTE requires that the modem be made available as soon as possible after receiving a disconnect command.

**NOTE:** This abrupt method of disconnecting may cause problems with the remote modem, which may interpret the disconnection as an error instead of a valid disconnect.

The factory default is Disable.

AT command equivalent is S-register S85=*n*.

**Table 8-3**
**(3 of 4)**
**Line Dialer Configuration Options**

**Long Space Disc: Enable**
**Nxt Enable Disable**

Long Space Disconnect. Determines the modem's response to a continuous spacing condition sent from the remote modem when it goes on-hook. Issuing a long space is one method of disconnecting a call.

**NOTE:** This configuration option is ignored when the modem operates in Synchronous mode or Dial Backup mode.

**Enable** – Modem disconnects if it receives a continuous space from the DTE. The modem's transmitter will transmit 4 seconds of long space upon a disconnect.

**Disable** – Modem does not disconnect if it receives a continuous space from the DTE. Modem will not transmit a long space disconnect.

For Async Dial, UNIX Dial, and Sync Leased, Enable is the factory default.

For Sync Dial, Disable is the factory default.

AT command equivalent is Y*n*.

**No Carrier Disc: 2sec**
**Nxt 2sec 5sec Disable 10sec 20sec**

No Carrier Disconnect. If the modem no longer receives carrier from the remote modem, it disconnects the call. This configuration option determines how long carrier is Off before the modem disconnects. Loss of carrier is one method of disconnecting a call.

**2, 5, 10, 20 sec** – Modem disconnects if carrier turns Off for more than 2 seconds, 5 seconds, 10 seconds, or 20 seconds.

**Disable** – Modem does not disconnect if carrier turns Off.

The factory default is 2sec.

AT command equivalent is S-register S10=*n*.

**No Data Disc: Disable**
**Nxt Disable 10min 30min 60min**

No Data Disconnect. Forces the modem to disconnect if no data is transmitted or received within a specified amount of time.

**Disable** – Modem remains connected despite the lack of data flow.

**10, 30, 60 min** – Modem disconnects if data is not received or transmitted within 10-minute, 30-minute, or 60-minute intervals.

The factory default is Disable.

AT command equivalent is \T*n*.

**Auto Make Busy: Disable**
**Nxt Disable Enable**

Automatic Make Busy. Forces the modem to go off-hook under the following conditions: a local analog loopback is performed, a self-test is performed, or if the modem is switched to the service line. This configuration option is valid only with the 3811*Plus* and does not appear on the LCD of standalone models.

**NOTE:** This configuration option should only be used when the modem is located behind a user's Private Branch Exchange (PBX). The Make Busy Network Interface Module (NIM) must be installed on the COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier. Refer to the *COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier, Installation Manual*.

The factory default is Disable.

AT command equivalent is S-register S40=*n*.

**Table 8-3**
**(4 of 4)**
**Line Dialer Configuration Options**

**MakeBusyViaDTR: Disable**
**Nxt Disable Enable**

Make Busy Via DTR. Determines if the modem goes off-hook when DTR is Off. Enable this setting if the DTE normally keeps DTR ON and turns DTR Off when the DTE cannot accept a call.

**NOTE:** This configuration option should only be used when the modem is located behind a user's Private Branch Exchange (PBX). For 3811*Plus* modems, the MakeBusy Network Interface Modules (NIMs) must be installed on the COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier. Refer to the *COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier, Installation Manual.*

The factory default is Disable.

AT command equivalent is S-register S69=*n*.

**DTR Auto Redial**
**Nxt Dir 1 Dirs1-2 Dirs 1-3 Dirs 1-4 Dirs 1-5 Dirs 1-6 Dirs 1-7 Dirs 1-8 Dirs 1-9 Dirs 1-10**

DTR Auto Redial. Defines the number of directory locations the modem may access when prior dialing attempts fail. For example, the selection Dirs1-10 means that all ten directory locations may be tied. The default is directory location 1 only.

DTR Auto Redial represents the same internal setting as that accessed with the Auto Redial configuration option in the Leased-Line group. However, DTR Auto Redial is in effect (and can be accessed) only if the DTE Dialer Type is DTR=Dirs.

**Dir 1** – The modem will use only directory location 1 for automatic dial backups.

**Dirs 1-2** – The modem will use directory location 2 in the event of call failure using directory location 1.

**Dirs 1-3** – The modem will use directory location 3 in the event of call failure using the preceding entries.

- •
- •

**Dirs 1-10** – The modem will use directory location 10 in the event of call failure using the preceding entries.

AT command equivalent is S37=*n.*

**MI/MIC Dialing: Disable**
**End Disable Enable**

MI/MIC Dialing. Also known as D-Lead signaling, is required by some PBX systems, older data phones, and security callback systems. It forces the modem into the originate handshake after first dialing a call.

**Disable** – Modem ignores activity on the MI/MIC contacts.

**Enable** – (3811*Plus* only.) When the MI/MIC contacts are closed, the modem goes into talk mode; when the contacts are open, the modem goes into data mode. A 26-pin D-Lead control connector located on the rear of the 3000 Series Carrier is used for MI/MIC Dialing for 3811*Plus* modems.

The factory default is Disable.

AT command equivalent is S-register S83=*n*.

## Dial Line

The Dial Line configuration options are used to configure the modem for operation over dial lines.

Table 8-4 shows each Dial Line configuration option as it appears on the LCD, with the Async Dial factory default setting (the default value if the modem is just being installed) shown following the colon (:) on the first line and with all available selections listed on the second line. Following this is a description of the configuration option, a description of the available selections, and any equivalent AT commands.

**Table 8-4**
**(1 of 4)**
**Dial Line Configuration Options**

| |
|---|
| **Modulation: V34**<br>**Nxt V34 V32bis/terbo V21/V22/BELL** |
| Modulation determines the modem's primary dial modulation group: V.34; V.32bis and V.32*terbo*; or V.21, V.22bis, V.22, Bell 212A, and Bell 103J.<br>The factory default is V34 (V.34 modulations). |
| **Dial LineRate: 28800(V34)**<br>**Nxt 28800(V34) 33600 31200 26400(V34) 24000(V34)**<br>**21600(V34) 19200(V34) 16800(V34) 14400(V34) 12000(V34) 9600(V34) 7200(V34) 4800(V34) 2400(V34)**<br>**- OR -**<br>**Nxt 19200(V32t) 16800(V32t) 14400(V32b) 12000(V32b) 9600(V32b) 7200(V32b) 4800(V32b)**<br>**- OR -**<br>**Nxt 2400(V22bis) 1200(V22) 1200(212A) 0–300(V21) 0–300(103J)** |
| Dial Line Rate. This configuration option determines the modem's data rate and modulation scheme for operation on dial lines. Online changes do not take effect until a disconnect occurs. Dial Line Rate sets the upper limit rate and modulation; lower speed connections may still be possible.<br>What Dial Line Rate configuration options are displayed depends the setting of Modulation.<br>**28800(V34), 33600, 31200, 26400(V34), 24000(V34), 21600(V34), 19200(V34), 16800(V34), 14400(V34), 12000(V34), 9600(V34), 7200(V34), 4800(V34)** – The modem operates using V.34 modulation at the data rate selected. The modem can be forced by the remote modem to a lower data rate. Note that if Automode is enabled and Dial Line Rate is set to V.34, the modem can connect in a non-V.34 modulation. However, if Dial Line Rate is not set to V.34, it cannot be Automoded to V.34. The 33,600 and 31,200 bps rates are Paradyne extensions of the CCITT V.34 recommendation.<br>**19200(V32t), 16800(V32t), 14400(V32b), 12000(V32b), 9600(V32b), 7200(V32b), 4800(V32b)** – The modem operates using V.32*terbo*, V.32bis, or V.32 modulation at the data rate selected. The modem can be forced by the remote modem to a lower data rate.<br>**2400(V22bis), 1200(V22), 1200(212A)** – Modem operates using the modulation and data rate selected.<br>**0–300(V21), 0–300(103J)** – Modem operates in full-duplex, Asynchronous mode. These data rates do not support V.42 or MNP® error control.<br>The factory default is 28800(V34).<br>AT command equivalent is S-register S41=*n.* |

**Table 8-4**
**(2 of 4)**
**Dial Line Configuration Options**

| **Automode: Enable**<br>**Nxt Enable Disable System 85** |
|---|
| Automode. Allows the modem to automatically detect the remote modem's modulation.<br><br>**Enable** – The modem automatically adapts to the modulation scheme and line rate of the remote modem, and the VF line condition. However, the maximum data rate the modem uses is determined by the Dial Line Rate configuration option. Bell 103J protocol is used for data rates of 0–300 bps.<br><br>**Disable** – Connection fails if the remote modem does not support the selected modulation.<br><br>**System 85** – Modifies parameters used by the connection process. Specify System 85 only if your modem is in a modem pool attached to a System 85 Private Branch Exchange (PBX).<br><br>The factory default is Enable.<br><br>AT command equivalent is S-register S78 = *n*. |
| **Autorate: Enable**<br>**Nxt Enable Disable StartAt48 StartAt96** |
| Autorate. Controls the modem's ability to adjust its speed upward and downward to accommodate the conditions of the VF line.<br><br>**Enable** – Once connected, the modem automatically lowers the line rate if line conditions become impaired. When line conditions improve, the modem automatically shifts up to the highest data rate the line can support, limited by the value of the Dial Line Rate configuration option. This autorating only occurs between 4800 bps and 19,200 bps during V.32bis and V.32*terbo* connections and between 2400 bps and 33,600 bps during V.34 connections.<br><br>**Disable** – Line rate does not vary after the initial line rate selection during startup.<br><br>**StartAt48, StartAt96** – Useful for lines with known noise problems, these settings cause the modem to connect at 4800 bps (StartAt48) or 9600 bps (StartAt96). If line conditions warrant it, the modem shifts up to the next higher rate until the value of Dial Line Rate or the highest possible rate for the line is reached.<br><br>The factory default is Enable.<br><br>AT command for Autorate is S-register S76=*n*. |

**Table 8-4**
**(3 of 4)**
**Dial Line Configuration Options**

**Dial TX Level: Permissv(–9)**
**Nxt Permissv(–9) –10 dBm –11 dBm –12 dBm –13 dBm –14 dBm –15 dBm –16 dBm –17 dBm –18 dBm –19 dBm –20 dBm –21 dBm –22 dBm –23 dBm –24 dBm –25 dBm –26 dBm –27 dBm –28 dBm –29 dBm –30 dBm –31 dBm –32 dBm ETC 1.0_Cell ETC 1.1_Cell**

Dial Transmit Level. Sets the power output level of the transmit signal over dial lines.

**Permissive (–9 dBm)** – The modem transmits data at approximately –9 dBm. This is true whether the modem is connected to an RJ11-type permissive jack or to an RJ41 or RJ45 programmable jack.

**ETC 1.0_Cell** – Transmit level is automatically adjusted in response to line conditions according to the proprietary Enhanced Throughput Cellular (ETC™) 1.0 specification. Use only with remote modems set to ETC 1.0_Cell, and limit the data rate to 4800 bps.

**ETC 1.1_Cell** – Transmit level is automatically adjusted in response to line conditions according to the proprietary Enhanced Throughput Cellular 1.1 specification.

The factory default is Permissv(–9).

AT command equivalent s are &I*n* and &J*n*.

**V22b Guard Tone: Disable**
**Nxt Disable 550Hz 1800Hz**

V.22bis Guard Tone. Determines whether the V.22bis guard tone is disabled, set to 550 Hz, or set to 1800 Hz.

**Disable** – No guard tone.

**550 Hz or 1800 Hz** – When the modem is in Answer mode, it transmits the guard tone at this frequency.

The factory default is Disable.

AT command equivalent is &G*n*.

**Train Time: Long**
**Nxt Long Short**

Train Time. Controls V.34, V.32*terbo*, V.32bis, and V.32 train. Determines whether minimum or maximum time durations are used during the handshaking sequence for both dial and leased line applications.

**NOTE:** This configuration option only appears when the Dial Line Rate configuration option is set for V.34, V.32*terbo*, V.32bis, or V.32.

**Long** – Selects long train. Use this setting whenever far-end frequency offset (phase roll) may be encountered. This is usually only required when transmitting over satellite links.

**Short** – Allows the modem to train-up faster.

The factory default is Long.

AT command equivalent is S-register S43=*n*.

**Table 8-4**
**(4 of 4)**
**Dial Line Configuration Options**

| |
|---|
| **Asymmetric Rate: Enable**<br>**Nxt Enable Disable** |
| Asymmetric Rate. Controls rate symmetry when running V.34 modulation. (This configuration option does not appear unless V.34 modulation is selected.)<br>**Enable** – The modem operates in asymmetric rate mode (the transmit and receive rates can be different) when running V.34 modulation. Asymmetric Rate must be enabled in both modems.<br>**Disable** – The modem operates in symmetric rate mode (the transmit and receive rates are identical) when running V.34 modulation. Either modem can force symmetric mode by disabling Asymmetric Rate.<br>The factory default is Enable.<br>AT command equivalent is S-register S14=*n*. |
| **FallFwdDelay: Disable**<br>**End Disable 5_mins 15_mins 1_hour** |
| Fall Forward Delay. Provides an initial delay before leased or dial lines are monitored for fall forward conditions. After the timer expires, monitoring occurs as usual. Possible delay times are 5 minutes, 15 minutes, or 1 hour.<br>The factory default is Disable (no delay).<br>**NOTE:** Fall Forward Delay appears under both the Dial Line configuration options and the Leased Line configuration options, but the same setting is used for both. Changing it in one place effectively changes it in the other.<br>There is no analogous AT command, so this configuration option is not available for modems without a shared or integral DCP. |

## Leased Line

The Leased Line configuration options are used to configure the modem for operation over leased lines.

> **NOTE**
>
> The Leased Line configuration group only appears if the modem is configured with the Sync Leased factory preset template.

The Leased Line configuration group only appears if the modem is configured with the Sync Leased factory preset template.

Table 8-5 shows each Leased Line configuration option as it appears on the LCD, with the Async Dial factory default setting (the default value if the modem is just being installed) shown following the colon (:) on the first line and with all available selections listed on the second line. Following this is a description of the configuration option, a description of the available selections, and any equivalent AT commands.

**Table 8-5**
**(1 of 4)**
**Leased Line Configuration Options**

| |
|---|
| ***Leased Mode: 4WLL-Orig**<br>**Nxt 4WLL-Orig 4WLL-Ans 2WLL-Orig 2WLL-Ans** |
| Leased Mode. Sets the modem for either 2-wire or 4-wire operation in Answer mode (receiving a call) or 2-wire or 4-wire operation in Originate (initiating a call) mode.<br>**NOTE:** For proper operation over leased lines, one modem must be set for Originate mode, and the other modem must be set for Answer mode.<br>For Sync Leased Answer Mode, 4-wire, Answer is the factory default.<br>For Sync Leased Originate Mode, 4-wire, Originate is the factory default.<br>AT command equivalent is &L*n*. |
| ***Modulation: V34**<br>**Nxt V34 V32bis/terbo V22bis V29/V33** |
| Modulation determines the modem's primary leased line modulation group: V.34; V.32bis and V.32*terbo*; V.22bis; or V.29 and V.33 (if installed).<br>The factory default is V34 (V.34 modulations). |
| * This configuration option is only available if the Sync Leased factory preset template is selected. |

**Table 8-5**
**(2 of 4)**
**Leased Line Configuration Options**

| |
|---|
| ***LeasedLine Rate: 28800(V34)**<br>**Nxt 28800(V34) 33600 31200 26400(V34) 24000(V34) 21600(V34) 19200(V34) 16800(V34) 14400(V34) 12000(V34) 9600(V34) 7200(V34) 4800(V34) 2400(V34)**<br>**- OR -**<br>**Nxt 19200(V32t) 16800(V32t) 14400(V32b) 12000(V32b) 9600(V32b) 7200(V32b) 4800(V32b)**<br>**- OR -**<br>**Nxt 2400(V22bis)**<br>**- OR -**<br>**Nxt 14400(V.33) 12000(V.33) 9600(V.29) 7200(V.29) 4800(V.29)** |
| Leased-Line Rate. Determines the modem's data rate and modulation scheme for operation on leased lines. In Async mode, the DTE rate must equal the leased-line rate. Leased Line Rate sets the upper limit rate and modulation; lower speed connections may still be possible.<br>What Leased Line Rate configuration options are displayed depends the setting of Modulation.<br>**28800(V34), 33600, 31200, 26400(V34), 24000(V34), 21600(V34), 19200(V34), 16800(V34), 14400(V34), 12000(V34), 9600(V34), 7200(V34), 4800(V34), 2400(V34)** – These modulation schemes are available on 2-wire or 4-wire leased lines. The modem operates using V.34 modulation at the data rate selected. The modem can be forced by the remote modem to a lower data rate. The 33,600 and 31,200 bps rates are Paradyne extensions of the CCITT V.34 recommendation.<br>**19200(V.32t), 16800(V32t), 14400(V.32bis), 12000(V.32bis), 9600 (V.32bis), 7200(V.32bis), 4800(V.32bis)** – These modulation schemes are available on 2-wire or 4-wire leased lines. If a fixed V.32bis rate is selected, the modem can still be commanded to fall back by a remote modem.<br>**2400(V.22bis)** – This modulation scheme is available on 2-wire and 4-wire leased lines.<br>**14400(V.33), 12000(V.33)** – These modulation schemes are available only on 4-wire leased lines, and only with modems that have the optional V.33 Leased-Line feature installed.<br>**9600(V.29), 7200(V.29), 4800(V.29)** – These modulation schemes are available only on 4-wire leased lines, and only with modems that have the optional V.29 Leased-Line feature installed.<br>**NOTE:** It is recommended that both modems use the same fixed data rate.<br>The factory default is 28800(V34).<br>AT command equivalent is S-register S44=*n.* |
| ***Autorate: Enable**<br>**Nxt Enable Disable** |
| Autorate. The modems adapt to VF line condition and connect at the optimum rate during initial line establishment. Once connected, the modem automatically lowers the line rate if line conditions become impaired. When line conditions improve, the modem automatically shifts up to the highest data rate the line can support. This autorating only occurs between 4800 bps and 19,200 bps during V.32bis and V.32*terbo* connections and between 2400 bps and 33,600 bps during V.34 connections.<br>The factory default is Enable.<br>AT command equivalent is S-register S82=*n.* |
| * This configuration option is only available if the Sync Leased factory preset template is selected. |

**Table 8-5**
**(3 of 4)**
**Leased Line Configuration Options**

***Leased TX Level: 0**
**Nxt 0 –1 –2 –3 –4 –5 –6 –7 –8 –9 –10 –11 –12 –13 –14 –15**

Leased Transmit Level. Selects the modem's transmit power level over leased lines. The transmit output level can be selected in 1 dBm decrements from 0 dBm to –15 dBm.

For V.34 operation over two-wire connections, do not set Leased TX Level to a value higher than –9 dBm.

The factory default is 0 dBm.

AT command equivalent is S-register S45=*n*.

***BadLn Auto Orig: Disable**
**Nxt Disable Enable FastBackup 2_min 5_min 10_min**

Bad Lines Auto Originate. Allows the modem to dial backup telephone numbers (as determined by the Auto Redial configuration option) to restore communications with the remote modem when the leased lines fail.

This configuration option must be enabled in both the local and remote modem. The Answer mode modem must have its Auto-Answer Ring Number configuration option enabled. Refer to the Line Dialer configuration option group for information regarding Auto-Answer.

**Disable** – The modem will not perform a Bad Lines Auto Originate.

**Enable** – The modem will originate a call after 30 seconds of continuous bad-line conditions.

**FastBackup** – The modem will originate a call after 20 seconds of continuous bad-line conditions.

**2_min** – The modem will originate a call after 2 minutes of continuous bad-line conditions.

**5_min** – The modem will originate a call after 5 minutes of continuous bad-line conditions.

**10_min** – The modem will originate a call after 10 minutes of continuous bad-line conditions.

The factory default is Disable.

AT command equivalent is S-register S46=*n.*

***Rate Auto Orig: Disable**
**Nxt Disable OnFlBkTo48 OnFlBkTo72 OnFlBkTo96 OnFlBkTo120 OnFlBkTo144 OnFlBkTo168**

Rate Auto Originate. Initiates a dial backup call, using the phone number in directory location 1, when the leased-line rate of the modem falls back to or below a certain speed.

**Disable** – The modem will not perform a Rate Auto Originate.

**OnFlBkTo48** – If the leased-line rate of the modem falls back to 4800 bps, a dial backup attempt will be initiated.

**OnFlBkTo72** – If the leased-line rate of the modem falls back to 7200 bps, a dial backup attempt will be initiated.

**OnFlBkTo96** – If the leased-line rate of the modem falls back to 9600 bps, a dial backup attempt will be initiated.

**OnFlBkTo120** – If the leased-line rate of the modem falls back to 12000 bps, a dial backup attempt will be initiated.

**OnFlBkTo144** – If the leased-line rate of the modem falls back to 14400 bps, a dial backup attempt will be initiated. This is available only on modems with the V.32*terbo* feature.

**OnFlBkTo168** – If the leased-line rate of the modem falls back to 16800 bps, a dial backup attempt will be initiated. This is available only on modems with the V.32*terbo* feature.

AT command equivalent is S36=*n.*

**NOTE**: Rate Auto-Originate is valid only when Autorate is enabled (S76=0) and when running V.32bis modulation.

* This configuration option is only available if the Sync Leased factory preset template is selected.

**Table 8-5**
**(4 of 4)**
**Leased Line Configuration Options**

***Auto Redial**
**Nxt Dir_1 Dirs_1-2 Dirs_1-3 Dirs_1-4 Dirs_1-5 Dirs_1-6 Dirs_1-7 Dirs_1-8 Dirs_1-9 Dirs_1-10**

Auto Redial. Works in conjunction with the Bad Lines Auto Originate and Rate Auto Originate options. It allows repeated automatic dial backup attempts by specifying the range of directory locations that can be tried. The modem must be in Originate mode.

**Dir_1** – The modem will use only directory location 1 for automatic dial backups.

**Dirs_1-2** – The modem will use directory location 2 in the event of call failure using directory location 1.

**Dirs_1-3** – The modem will use directory location 3 in the event of call failure using the preceding entries.

- •
- •
- •
- •

**Dirs_1-10** – The modem will use directory location 10 in the event of call failure using the preceding entries.

AT command equivalent is S37=*n.*

***AutoDialStandby: Disable**
**Nxt Disable 15min 1hr 4hr Test(2min) Adv15min Adv30min Adv1hr AdvTest2min**

Automatic Dial Standby. Permits a modem operating on dial lines (regardless of the method of dialing origination) to check the quality of the leased lines periodically and, if they are good, to disconnect from the dial lines and resume operations on the leased lines.

The time interval that the modem uses to check the quality of the leased lines is determined by the configuration option. These intervals are 15 minutes, 1 hour, and 4 hours.

The normal settings cause an interruption of data flow on the dial line while the leased-line connection is checked. The Advanced settings allow data flow to continue without interruption while the leased line is evaluated.
**If Advanced settings are used, then both modems must be configured to the same Advanced setting.**

The Test(2min) selections are for testing this feature only.

The factory default is Disable.

AT command equivalent is S-register S47=*n.*

***CarrierOn Level: –43dbm**
**End –43dbm –26dbm**

Carrier On Level. This configuration option controls the carrier detection threshold for leased lines. When the power level of the receive carrier signal drops 2 dBm below this level (either –26 dBm or –43 dBm), LSD turns Off. When the carrier signal is greater than this level, LSD turns ON.

The factory default is –43dbm.

AT command equivalent is S-register S48=*n.*

***FallFwdDelay: Disable**
**End Disable 5_mins 15_mins 1_hour**

Fall Forward Delay. Provides an initial delay before leased or dial lines are monitored for fall forward conditions. After the timer expires, monitoring occurs as usual. Possible delay times are 5 minutes, 15 minutes, or 1 hour.

The factory default is Disable (no delay).

**NOTE:** Fall Forward Delay appears under both the Dial Line configuration options and the Leased Line configuration options, but the same setting is used for both. Changing it in one place effectively changes it in the other.

There is no analogous AT command, so this option is not available for modems without a shared or integral DCP.

* This configuration option is only available if the Sync Leased factory preset template is selected.

## V.42/MNP/Buffer

V.42/MNP/Buffer configuration options determine the type of error correction and flow control used by the modems and attached DTEs.

Some choices within this group may not appear depending upon how previous configuration options have been selected. If the Async/Sync Mode configuration option is set for synchronous operation (see DTE Interface configuration options group), then the V.42/MNP/Buffer group does not appear on the LCD. Any changes made to configuration options within this group only take effect after a disconnect.

Table 8-6 shows each V.42/MNP/Buffer configuration option as it appears on the LCD, with the Async Dial factory default setting (the default value if the modem is just being installed) shown following the colon (:) on the first line and with all available selections listed on the second line. Following this is a description of the configuration option, a description of the available selections, and any equivalent AT commands.

**Table 8-6**
**(1 of 6)**
**V.42/MNP/Buffer Configuration Options**

| |
|---|
| ***Err Contrl Mode: V42/MNPorBfr**<br>**Nxt V42/MNPorBfr V42/MNPorDsc MNP_or_Buffr MNP_or_Disc BufferMode DirectMode LAPM_or_Disc LAPM_or_Buffr** |
| Determines the type of error control used by the modem. In most cases, V42/MNPorBfr is the best choice. If V.42bis and MNP are enabled, then the modem uses the following priority for error control negotiation: V.42, MNP 5 and below, and Buffer Mode. Online changes do not take effect until a disconnect occurs.<br><br>**V.42/MNP or Buffer** – Modem attempts to connect in V.42 Error Control mode. If this fails, the modem attempts to connect in MNP mode. If this fails, the modem connects in Buffer mode and continues operation. This is also known as V42/MNP Autoreliable Mode.<br><br>**V.42/MNP or Disconnect** – Modem attempts to connect in V.42 Error Control mode. If this fails, the modem attempts to connect in MNP mode. If this fails, the modem disconnects. This is also known as Reliable mode.<br><br>**MNP or Buffer** – Modem attempts to connect in MNP mode. If this fails, the modem connects in Buffer mode. This is also known as MNP Autoreliable Mode.<br><br>**MNP or Disconnect** – Modem attempts to connect in MNP mode. If this fails, the modem disconnects. This is also known as Reliable mode.<br><br>**Buffer Mode** – Modem does not use error control and allows the DTE rate to differ from the communications line rate. This mode should only be used if the DTE provides its own error control or if errors in data can be tolerated. This setting is also known as Normal mode and is valid even if the remote modem is set for Direct mode.<br><br>**Direct Mode** – Modem connects at a data rate equal to or less than the initial DTE interface rate. (The modem never connects at a data rate greater than the initial DTE rate.) If the modem connects at a data rate lower than the DTE rate, the DTE must then adjust its data rate to equal the modem rate. Ultimately, the modem speed and DTE speed must be the same. Direct mode does not support error control or data buffering.<br><br>**LAPM or Disconnect** – Modem attempts to connect in V.42 Link Access Procedure for Modems (LAPM) error control mode. If this fails, the modem disconnects. This setting should be used for cellular connections (at both the mobile and PSTN sides) when it is known that both sides support V.42.<br><br>**LAPM or Buffer** – Modem attempts to connect in V.42 LAPM error control mode. If this fails, the modem connects in Buffer mode and continues operation.<br><br>**NOTE:** The modem must be reconfigured for Direct mode before changing the leased-line modulation if V.42 error control or Buffer mode are enabled with V.32bis on leased lines.<br><br>For Async Dial and UNIX Dial, V42/MNPorBfr is the factory default.<br>For Sync Dial and Sync Leased, DirectMode is the factory default.<br><br>AT command equivalent is \N*n*. |
| * This configuration option is only available if Async/Sync Mode is configured for Async. Refer to the DTE Interface configuration options group for more on Async/Sync Mode. |

**Table 8-6**
**(2 of 6)**
**V.42/MNP/Buffer Configuration Options**

***V42bis Compress: Enable**
**Nxt Enable Disable**

V.42bis Compression. Enables or disables V.42bis data compression.

**Enable** – Data compression operates in both the transmit and receive directions. This is the recommended setting for all applications.

**Disable** – V.42bis data compression is disabled. This is rarely needed because V.42bis data compression does not cause data expansion for compressed data.

The factory default is Enable.

**NOTE:** This configuration option is only available if Error Control Mode configuration option is set for V42/MNPorBfr or . V42/MNPorDsc.

AT command equivalent is ″H*n*.

***MNP5 Compress: Enable**
**Nxt Enable Disable**

MNP5 Compression. Determines if the modem uses MNP Class 5 data compression. It can be set independently of V.42bis data compression. Online changes do not take effect until a disconnect occurs.

The factory default is Enable.

**NOTE:** This configuration option is only available if Error Control Mode configuration option is set for V42/MNPorBfr, V42/MNPorDsc, MNP or Buffr, or MNP or Disc.

AT command equivalent is %C*n*.

***EC Negotiat Bfr: Disable**
**Nxt Disable Enable Disab&Switch**

Error Control Negotiate Buffer. Determines if the answering modem buffers the data that it received from the remote modem during an interval in which the modem attempts to establish a connection using error control. Online changes do not take effect until a disconnect occurs.

**Disable** – Data is not buffered during the link negotiating (handshaking) sequence.

**Enable** – Data is buffered while the link is being established. Initialization data is not passed on the DTE during the handshaking sequence.

**Disable and Switch** – Data is not buffered during the handshaking sequence. However, when the modem receives an error control fallback character, it switches to Buffer mode. (See EC Fallback Char configuration option.)

The factory default is Disable.

AT command equiovalent is \C*n*.

* This configuration option is only available if Async/Sync Mode is configured for Async. Refer to the DTE Interface configuration options group for more on Async/Sync Mode.

**Table 8-6**
**(3 of 6)**
**V.42/MNP/Buffer Configuration Options**

***EC Fallbck Char: 013 ASCI**
**Nxt ↑ 013 ASCI**

Error Control Fallback Character. This configuration option allows you to enter the ASCII value of the error control fallback character. This provides the remote modem with the ability to end the error control link negotiating (handshaking) sequence by sending this character. The modems will connect in Buffer mode (no error control). Online changes do not take effect until a disconnect occurs.

When the modem receives this fallback character it switches to Buffer mode and transmits an EC fallback character to the DTE. When comparing incoming characters for a match against the EC fallback character, the modem ignores parity.

The factory default is 13 ASCII.

**NOTE:** This configuration option is only available if EC Negotiate Buffer is configured for Disab&Switch.

AT command equivalent is %A*n*.

***Flw Cntl of DTE: CTS_to_DTE**
**Nxt CTS_to_DTE Disable XON/XOFF**

Flow Control of DTE. Determines how the modem controls the flow of data from the DTE.

**CTS to DTE** – Method of flow control in which the modem raises and lowers its CTS interface lead to indicate when the DTE should start and stop sending data.

**Disable** – The modem cannot control the flow of data from the DTE.

**XON/XOFF** – Method of flow control in which the modem sends XON and XOFF characters to the DTE to start and stop the flow of data.

The factory default is CTS to DTE.

AT command equivalent is \Q*n*.

***Flw Cntl of Mdm: Disable**
**Nxt Disable XON/XOFF RTS_to_Mdm**

Flow Control of Modem. Determines how the DTE controls the flow of data from the modem.

**Disable** – The DTE cannot control the flow of data from the modem.

**XON/XOFF** – Method of flow control in which the modem starts and stops data flow based upon XON and XOFF characters received from the DTE.

**RTS to Modem** – Method of flow control in which the modem respectively starts and stops data transmission based upon the ON and Off state of the DTE's RTS signal.

The factory default is Disable.

AT command equivalent is \Q*n*.

* This configuration option is only available if Async/Sync Mode is configured for Async. Refer to the DTE Interface configuration options group for more on Async/Sync Mode.

**Table 8-6**
**(4 of 6)**
**V.42/MNP/Buffer Configuration Options**

***XON/XOFF Psthru: Disable**
**Nxt Disable Enable**

XON/XOFF Passthrough. Considers an XON/XOFF character as data and passes it on to the remote modem. In this case, the DTE at one end of the communications link can send flow control characters to the other DTE. This is also known as DTE to DTE flow control.

**Disable** – Flow control characters are processed but are not passed on to the remote modem.

**Enable** – Flow control characters are processed and passed on to the remote modem.

The factory default is Disable.

**NOTE:** This configuration option is only available if the Flow Control configuration option is configured for XON/XOFF.

AT command equivalent is \X*n*.

***Mdm/Mdm FlowCtl: Disable**
**Nxt Disable Enable**

Modem-to-Modem Flow Control. If a modem's buffers begin to fill due to data it is receiving from the remote modem, but is not passing on to the DTE, it can issue XON/XOFF flow control characters to the remote modem. This only applies if Buffer (nonerror control) mode is selected. If Error Control mode is enabled, flow control between the modems will happen automatically, regardless of the setting of this option.

**Disable** – Modem does not respond to XON and XOFF characters received over the VF line. Also, the modem will not transmit an XOFF character to the remote end if its receive buffers are full.

**Enable** – Modem stops transmitting data to the remote modem if it receives an XOFF character over the VF line. An XON character will enable data transmission. Also, the modem will transmit an XOFF character to the remote end if its receive buffers are full. Select this setting if the DTE rate is less than the VF line rate or if the DTE must frequently stop the flow of data to process it.

The factory default is Disable.

**NOTE:** This configuration option is only available if Flow Control is configured for XON/XOFF.

AT command equivalent is \G*n*.

***Break Buffr Ctl: Keep-Data**
**Nxt Keep-Data Discard-Data**

Break Buffer Control. Determines if data stored in the modem's buffer is saved or discarded when the DTE issues a break sequence.

**Keep Data (Nondestructive mode)** – Saves the data in the buffer in both the local and remote modems.

**Discard Data (Destructive mode)** – Empties the data buffer. Only buffers in the same direction of travel as the break are discarded.

The factory default is Keep Data.

**NOTE:** This configuration option is ignored if the Break Forces Escape configuration option (see DTE Dialer configuration options group) is enabled.

AT command equivalent is \K*n*.

* This configuration option is only available if Async/Sync Mode is configured for Async. Refer to the DTE Interface configuration options group for more on Async/Sync Mode.

**Table 8-6**
**(5 of 6)**
**V.42/MNP/Buffer Configuration Options**

***Send Break Cntl: Data-First**
**Nxt Data-First Break-First**

Send Break Control. Determines what is sent from the modem first, data or break if a break sequence is sent from the DTE.

**Data First (Nonexpedited)** – A break is treated as a data character and is sent in the order it was received. This is also known as Nonexpedited mode.

**Break First (Expedited)** – A break is sent before the data currently in the buffer. This is also known as Expedited mode.

The factory default is Data First.

**NOTE:** This configuration option is ignored if the Break Forces Escape configuration option (see DTE Dialer configuration options group) is enabled.

AT command equivalent is \K*n*.

***TXBuffDiscDelay: 10sec**
**Nxt 10sec 60sec Disable**

The Transmit Buffer Disconnect Delay is the maximum amount of time the modem can continue to send data in its Transmit Buffer to the remote modem after it is commanded by the DTE to disconnect. Disable means that the disconnect occurs immediately. The default is 10 seconds.

**Disable** – Modem disconnects immediately without attempting to send data stored in its buffers.

**10, 60 sec** – Maximum amount of time the modem tries to empty its buffers before disconnecting. In both cases (10 sec and 60 sec), the modem disconnects much sooner if it can empty its buffers.

**NOTE:** This configuration option is not available if Error Control Mode configuration option is set for DirectMode.

AT command equivalent is S-register S49=*n.*

***RxBuffDiscDelay: Disable**
**Nxt 10sec 60sec Disable**

Receive Buffer Disconnect Delay. Determines the maximum amount of time the modem can continue to send data in its Receive Buffer to the DTE after the modem is commanded by the DTE to disconnect, or after the modem detects a line disconnect. Through the DCP the available settings are Disable, 10sec, and 60sec; Disable means that the disconnect occurs immediately. The default is Disable.

**Disable** – Modem disconnects immediately without attempting to send data stored in its buffers.

**10, 60 sec** – Maximum amount of time the modem tries to empty its buffers before disconnecting. In both cases (10 sec and 60 sec), the modem disconnects much sooner if it can empty its buffers.

**NOTE:** This configuration option is not available if Error Control Mode configuration option is set for DirectMode.

AT command equivalent is S-register S39=*n.*

***Max Frame Size: 256**
**Nxt 256 192 128 64 32 16**

For cellular applications, at least one of the modems should be set to 32.

AT command equivalent is \A*n*.

* This configuration option is only available if Async/Sync Mode is configured for Async. Refer to the DTE Interface configuration options group for more on Async/Sync Mode.

**Table 8-6**
**(6 of 6)**
**V.42/MNP/Buffer Configuration Options**

| ***CellularEnhance: Disable**<br>**End Disable Enable** |
|---|
| Enables or disables V.42 Cellular Enhancement mode.<br>**Disable** – The modem uses standard techniques for V.42 operation.<br>**Enable** – Cellular enhancements are enabled. The modem is still compatible with modems that do not have cellular enhancements installed or enabled.<br>AT command equivalent is S91=*n*. |
| * This configuration option is only available if Async/Sync Mode is configured for Async. Refer to the DTE Interface configuration options group for more on Async/Sync Mode. |

## Test

The Test configuration options determine specifics, such as the duration of a test, for the various diagnostic tests available to the modem.

Table 8-7 shows each Test configuration option as it appears on the LCD, with the Async Dial factory default setting (the default value if the modem is just being installed) shown following the colon (:) on the first line and with all available selections listed on the second line. Following this is a description of the configuration option, a description of the available selections, and any equivalent AT commands.

**Table 8-7**
**(1 of 2)**
**Test Configuration Options**

| |
|---|
| **DTE RL (CT140): Disable**<br>**Nxt Disable Enable** |
| DTE Remote Loopback. Controls the use of Pin 21 of the RS-232D/CCITT V.24 interface by the DTE to initiate a remote loopback. An Abort command or test time-out ends this test.<br>**Enable** – The DTE forces the modem into remote loopback when the signal on Pin 21 (CCITT 140) is turned ON. Remote Loop ends when the signal is dropped.<br>**Disable** – The DTE does not initiate remote loopback in response to the signal on Pin 21.<br>The factory default is Disable.<br>AT command equivalent is S-register S51=*n*. |
| **DTE LL (CT141): Disable**<br>**Nxt Disable Enable** |
| DTE Local Loopback. Controls the use of Pin 18 of the RS-232D/CCITT V.24 interface by the DTE to initiate a local loopback. An Abort command or test time-out ends this test.<br>**Enable** – The DTE forces the modem into local loopback when the signal on Pin 18 (CCITT 141) is turned ON. Local loopback ends when the signal is dropped.<br>**Disable** – The DTE will not initiate local loopback in response to the signal on Pin 18.<br>The factory default is Disable.<br>AT command equivalent is S-register S52=*n*. |
| **Test Timeout: Disable**<br>**Nxt Disable 30sec 60sec 240sec** |
| Test Time-out. Determines how long a test runs before aborting.<br>**Disable** – Allows a test to run indefinitely.<br>**30, 60, or 240 seconds** – Allows the test to run for 30 seconds, 60 seconds, or 240 seconds.<br>The factory default is Disable.<br>AT command equivalent is S-register S18=*n*. |
| **Rcv Remote Loop: Enable**<br>**Nxt Enable Disable** |
| Receive Remote Loopback Response. Determines if the modem responds to a request for a remote loopback issued from a remote modem.<br>The factory default is Enable.<br>AT command equivalent is &T*n*. |

**Table 8-7**
**(2 of 2)**
**Test Configuration Options**

| **V54 Address: Disable**<br>**Nxt Disable (Address Values)** |
|---|
| V.54 Address. Determines which remote 3800*Plus* modem is placed into a remote loopback test. This can be either a remote digital loopback or local analog loopback. This type of addressing can be used for extended data circuits (tail circuits).<br><br>**Disable** – This is used for normal point-to-point dial and leased-line networks.<br><br>**Address Values** – 01, 03, 05, 07, 09, 0B, 0D, 0F, 11, 13, 15, 17, 19, 1B, 1D, 1F, 25, 27, 2B, 2D, 2F, 33, 35, 37, 3B, 3D, 3F, 55, 57, 5B, 5F, 6F, 77, or 7F. This configuration option selects the address of a modem that is to be placed into a loopback test. This configuration option is used for more complex networks where multiple modems, used in extended data circuits (tail circuits), can be commanded to loopback.<br><br>**CAUTION:** Selecting an address will disable any remote loopback that can be commanded from a remote modem. The DTE must now control loopback via CT140 and supply the address.<br><br>The factory default is Disable.<br><br>AT command equivalent is S53=*n*. |
| **V54 Device Type: Peripheral**<br>**End Peripheral Intermediate** |
| V.54 Device Type. Identifies where the modem is physically located in the network.<br><br>**Peripheral** – The modem is located at the endpoint of the network and is not connected back-to-back with another modem.<br><br>**Intermediate** – The modem is either of the two modems connected back-to-back.<br><br>**NOTE:** This configuration option is only available if V54 Address is enabled.<br><br>The factory default is Peripheral.<br><br>AT command equivalent is S54=*n*. |

## Misc

The Miscellaneous configuration options determine specifics for various functions, including network management parameters and remote modem access.

Table 8-8 shows each Misc (Miscellaneous) configuration option as it appears on the LCD, with the Async Dial factory default setting (the default value if the modem is just being installed) shown following the colon (:) on the first line and with all available selections listed on the second line. Following this is a description of the configuration option, a description of the available selections, and any equivalent AT commands.

**Table 8-8**
**(1 of 3)**
**Miscellaneous Configuration Options**

**StrapsWhenDisc: No_Change**
**Nxt No_Change Reload RelodNoATChg**

Straps When Disconnected. Determines whether or not configuration options in the Active (Saved) configuration area are reloaded to Active (Operating) when a disconnect occurs. This is useful in modem pooling applications.

**No Change** – Configuration options do not change upon disconnect.

**Reload** – The Active (Operating) configuration area, which controls modem operation, is reloaded from the Active (Saved) configuration area when a disconnect occurs. This is useful in modem pooling applications where it is desirable to start the modem from a known condition after every call. This allows multiple users to issue AT commands to change the modem's operation for their particular call.

**Reload, No AT Change** – This has the same effect as Reload, except that it becomes impossible to change this configuration option with an AT command, and the command buffer is cleared so that /A (Repeat Last Command) has no effect.

**NOTE:** If Reload or RelodNoATChg is selected, the following AT commands are disabled although the OK result code appears when these commands are issued:

AT&F0. Loads Async Dial into Active(Operating)
AT&F1. Loads Sync Dial into Active (Operating)
AT&F2. Loads Sync Leased (Answer) into Active (Operating)
AT&F3. Loads UNIX Dial into Active(Operating)
AT&F4. Loads Sync Leased (Originate) into Active (Operating)
AT&F5. Loads Cellular(Mobile) into Active (Operating)
AT&F6. Loads Cellular (PSTN) into Active (Operating)
AT&W0. Write Active(Operating) to Active(Saved)
AT&W1. Write Active(Operating) to Customer 1
AT&W2. Write Active(Operating) to Customer 2
AT&Zn=*x.* Store directory numbers

Factory default templates do not affect the setting of StrapsWhenDisc.

AT command equivalent is S88=*n*.

**Speaker Control: OnUntilCarr**
**Nxt OnUntilCarr Off On**

Speaker Control. Determines if the speaker is **Off**, **On** until carrier signal is received by the modem, or **On** all the time.

The factory default is OnUntilCarr.

**NOTE:** Speaker Control can also be temporarily set using the Control branch; however, a reset or power cycle will restore the modem to the Speaker Control and Speaker Volume configuration option settings.

AT command equivalent is M*n*.

**Table 8-8**
**(2 of 3)**
**Miscellaneous Configuration Options**

| |
|---|
| **Speaker Volume: Medium**<br>**Nxt Medium Low High** |
| Speaker Volume. Controls the level of speaker volume.<br>The factory default is Medium.<br>**NOTE:** Speaker Volume can also be temporarily set using the Control branch; however, a reset or power cycle will restore the modem to the Speaker Control and Speaker Volume configuration option settings.<br>AT command equivalent is L*n*. |
| **Access frm Remt: Enable**<br>**Nxt Enable Disable** |
| Access from Remote. Determines if your modem's DCP can be accessed by a remote modem via the VF line.<br>If this configuration option is disabled, the modem cannot be accessed by another modem, and the Clone to Remote feature is not available.<br>**Enable** – Allows access from a remote modem.<br>**Disable** – Does not allow access from a remote modem.<br>The factory default templates do not affect Access from Remote.<br>**NOTE:** The remote modem must be a 3800*Plus* modem.<br>AT command equivalent is S-register S55=*n*. |
| **RemAccssPasswrd: 00000000**<br>**Nxt ↑ 00000000** |
| Remote Access Password. Allows the entry of a password for establishing control of a remote modem from the DCP of a local modem. The same password must be used in both the local and remote modem.<br>**NOTE:** If the Access from Remote configuration option is set to Disable, the password has no effect.<br>AT command equivalent is S-registers S56, S57, S58, and S59=*n*. |
| **Dir#1_Callback: Disable**<br>**Nxt Disable Enable** |
| Directory location 1 Callback. This configuration option controls whether or not the modem's single number callback function is used.<br>**Disable** – Modem does not use the single number callback function.<br>**Enable** – Modem answers a call, disconnects, and dials the number stored in directory location 1.<br>**NOTE:** This function is disabled if dial access security is enabled.<br>The factory default is Disable.<br>AT Command equivalent is S67=*n*. |
| **NetMngmtAddress: 256**<br>**Nxt ↑ 256** |
| Network Management Address. Determines the address used when accessing a locally attached modem from the 6700 Series NMS. This configuration option is ignored by remote modems.<br>Address values range from 001 to 256.<br>The factory default templates do not affect Network Management Address.<br>AT command equivalent is S-register S75=*n*. |

**Table 8-8**
**(3 of 3)**
**Miscellaneous Configuration Options**

**NMS_Call_Msgs: CallCnct&Prg**
**Nxt CallCnct&Prg Disable CallCnctOnly CallProgOnly**

NMS Call Messages. Determines if modem status and/or call summary information is sent to the 6700 Series NMS. The modem can itemize status, such as CallProgress messages, or it can report a summary of activity, such as Call Connect messages, to the NMS.

**Call Connect & Progress** – Enables both Call Connect and Call Progress information to be reported to the NMS.

**Disable** – Modem status and call summary information is not sent to the NMS.

**Call Connect Only** – The modem accumulates call statistics over a period of time and then reports these statistics to the NMS. The NMS uses this data to produce utilization reports.

**Call Progress Only** – The modem reports detailed modem status information to the NMS. These messages include any events that can display on the LCD.

The factory default templates do not affect NMS Call Messages.

AT command equivalent is S66=*n*.

**NMS DTR Alarm: Disable**
**Nxt Disable Enable**

NMS DTR Alarm. Determines whether an NMS DTE alarm report is generated when DTR is off.

**Disable** – The state of DTR does not cause an alarm condition to be reported.

**Enable** – A DTE alarm condition is reported to the NMS controller in the Device Health & Status message if DTR is off for more than 10 seconds. The alarm condition is reported as inactive after DTR is on for 3 seconds.

The factory default templates do not affect NMS DTR Alarm.

AT command equivalent is S77=*n*.

**NetworkPosition: Tributary**
**Nxt Tributary Control**

Network Position Identification. Each modem must be identified either as a control modem or a tributary modem.

**NOTE:** This configuration option is only applicable for leased-line network management applications.

For the 3810*Plus* and 3820*Plus*, Tributary is the factory default.

For the 3811*Plus*, Control is the factory default.

AT command equivalent is S74=*n*.

**CellulrRJ11Adpt:: Disable**
**End Disable Enable**

Cellular RJ11 Adapt. Allows the modem to support an RJ11 connection to a 3-watt phone. It also causes the modem to transmit the ETC 1.1 Calling Tone during call origination.

**Disable** – No RJ11 support or ETC 1.1 Calling Tone.

**Enable** – For use when the Cellular(Mobile) factory template is loaded, enables RJ11 support and ETC 1.1 Calling Tone.

AT command equivalent is S93=*n*.

# Security Configuration Options

The Security Configuration Options group allows you to view and set dial access security parameters. This group appears only if the dial access security feature has been installed.

Table 8-9 shows each Security configuration option as it appears on the LCD. The factory default value is shown after the colon (:) on the first line; all available selections are listed on the second line. After this, a description of the each selection follows. These configuration options do not have an equivalent AT command.

**Table 8-9**
**(1 of 2)**
**Security Configuration Options**

| |
|---|
| ***EntryWait_Time: 20 sec**<br>**Nxt 20 sec 10 sec 40 sec 60 sec** |
| Entry Wait Timeout. Determines how long the answering modem waits for the originating modem to enter a VF-side password and DTE-side password.<br>This timer resets for each phase of access security. For example, if a VF-side password and a DTE-side password are required, then the user has 20 seconds per entry to input the correct password.<br>The factory default is 20 seconds. |
| **VF_Prompt_Type: 2nd_DialTone**<br>**Nxt 2nd_DialTone Quiet_Answer** |
| VF Prompt Type. Determines how the answering modem requests a valid password from the originating modem for the valid password. This configuration option is only used for VF-side password entry and is not valid for DTE-side password entry.<br>**NOTE:** This configuration option only appears if the Answer Security Mode configuration option is configured for VF_&_DTE.<br>**2nd Dial Tone** – Once the answering modem is off-hook, it generates a dial tone to the originating modem as a prompt for that modem's VF-side password. (Wait for Second Dial Tone is represented by a W in the dial command string.)<br>**Quiet Answer** – Once the answering modem is off-hook, it does not send an answer tone to the originating modem. The originating modem enters its VF-side password after detecting a ring back signal followed by five seconds of silence. For this to work correctly, the Auto Answer Ring # configuration option in the answering modem must be set to 2 rings or greater. (Wait for Quiet Answer is represented by an @ in the dial command string.)<br>The factory default is 2nd_DialTone. |
| ***#DTE_PW_Tries: 1**<br>**Nxt 1 2 3 4 5** |
| Number of DTE Password Tries. Determines the number of attempts an originating user has to enter a valid DTE-side password. If the password entered does not match a value in the answering modem's Password Table, then the modem will issue the password prompt again (provided that the number of tries is set to a value greater than 1). This will continue until the correct password is entered by the originating user or the number of tries allowed is met.<br>The factory default is 1. |
| ***DTE_PW_TermChar: 013**<br>**Nxt † 013** |
| DTE Password Termination Character. Allows you to change the ASCII character used to indicate the end of a password or User ID entered by an originating user. This character can be set to any ASCII value from 0 to 127.<br>The factory default is 13 (ASCII carriage return). |
| * This configuration option does not appear if the Answer Security Mode configuration option is configured for No Answer Security. |

**Table 8-9**
**(2 of 2)**
**Security Configuration Options**

| |
|---|
| ***DTE_PW_BkSpChar: 008**<br>**Nxt ↑ 008** |
| DTE Password Backspace Character. Sets the character that is used to perform a backspace in security mode. This character can be set to any ASCII value from 0 to 127.<br><br>The factory default is 08 (ASCII backspace). |
| **Get_User_ID: Disable**<br>**Nxt Disable Enable** |
| Get User ID. Determines whether the remote user is prompted for an NMS-defined logon ID once the modems have completed initial handshaking. For consistent operation from the remote user's viewpoint, all modems in a modem group must use the same setting.<br><br>**Disable** – The user is prompted only for a password (if required by the setting of Answer Security Mode or the configuration of the VF-side password).<br><br>**Enable** – The user is prompted for a login ID and then a password (if required by the setting of Answer Security Mode or the configuration of the VF-side password). NMS sends a disconnect command to the local modem if the login ID is invalid.<br><br>The factory default is Disable. |
| **NMS_Reporting: 00**<br>**Nxt ↑ 00** |
| NMS Reporting. Determines whether and how dial access security events are reported to the NMS controller. The possible values, 00–15, represent a bit map. The bits are normally set using the NMS controller.<br><br>The value of NMS_Reporting is not affected by loading a factory default template. The initial value when the modem is shipped is 00. |
| **Answer_Secur: No_Answ_Sec**<br>**Nxt No_Answ_Sec DTE_Only VF_&_DTE VF_w/_DTE** |
| Answer Access Security Mode. This configuration option is read-only and cannot be changed from the Configure branch. The setting of this configuration option can only be changed in the Set Answer Sec group found in the Security branch.<br><br>The settings of this configuration option determine the type of access security protection provided by the modem. It can be disabled using the No_Answ_Sec setting, or it can be enabled with the DTE_Only, VF_&_DTE, or VF_w/_DTE settings. |
| **Originate_Secur: No_OrigSec**<br>**Nxt No_OrigSec Ena_Orig_Sec** |
| Originate Security Mode. This configuration option is read-only and cannot be changed from the Configure branch. The setting of this configuration option can only be changed in the Set Orig Sec group found in the Security branch.<br><br>This configuration option enables or disables security protection used for outbound calls when using the AT command autodialer function. |
| * This configuration option does not appear if the Answer Security Mode configuration option is configured for No Answer Security. |

# Control Branch 9

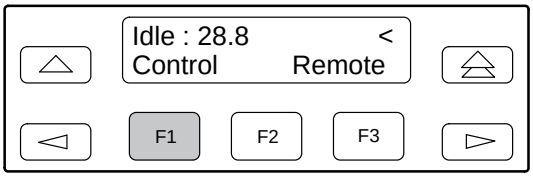

Overview . . . . . 9-1
Control Branch . . . . . 9-1
Speaker . . . . . 9-2
Reset . . . . . 9-2
Make Busy/Remove Make Busy . . . . . 9-3
Service Line/Disconnect Service Line . . . . . 9-3
Download Code . . . . . 9-4
Automatic Firmware Download . . . . . 9-6
Download Failure . . . . . 9-6


## Overview

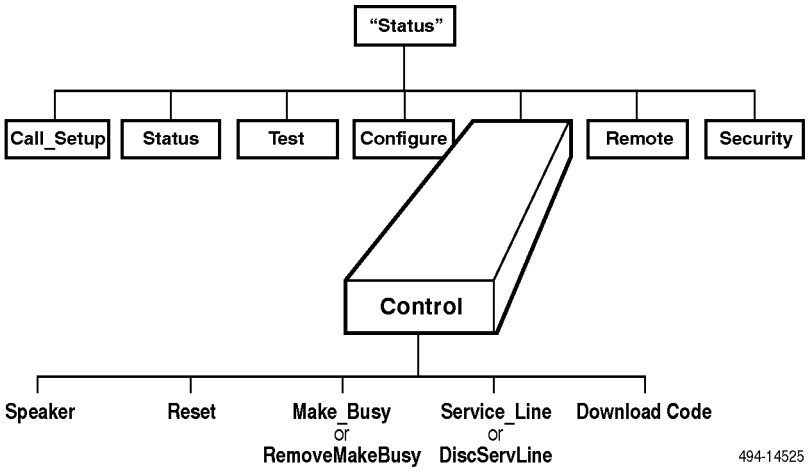
The Control branch of the Top-Level menu allows you to manage hardware and software functions, such as speaker volume, reset, busy out, and firmware download. The 3811*Plus* modem has the additional hardware function, Service Line.

## Control Branch

To access Control from the Top-Level menu, make the following selections:



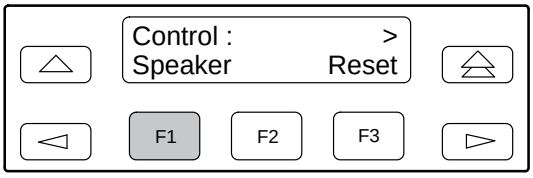

Press the ▻ key until Control appears. Select Control.



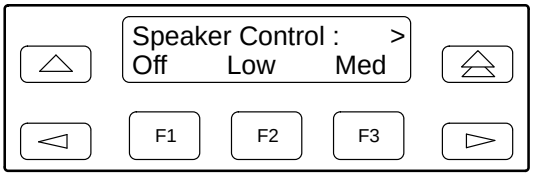
## Speaker

Speaker allows you to make temporary adjustments to the modem's speaker volume. Upon a reset, speaker volume returns to its configured setting. For more information on speaker settings, refer to the *Misc* section in Chapter 7.

To access Speaker from the Control branch, make the following selections:




Select Speaker.




Press the ▻ key and appropriate function keys to choose the desired selection.

DCP selections are

| | |
|---|---|
| **Off** | Turns the speaker off. |
| **Low** | Adjusts speaker to low volume. |
| **Med** | Adjusts speaker to medium volume. |
| **High** | Adjusts speaker to high volume. |

**Command Complete** appears on the LCD.

To exit Speaker and remain in the Control branch, press the △ key. To exit and return to the Top-Level menu, press the ⏢ key.

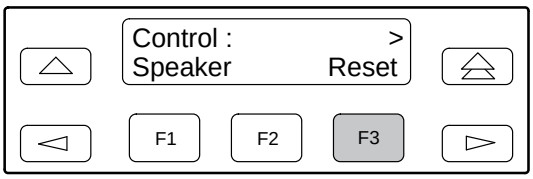
### *AT Command Equivalent*

The AT commands for ON/Off are M0, M1, and M2. The AT commands for volume control are L0, L1, L2, and L3.

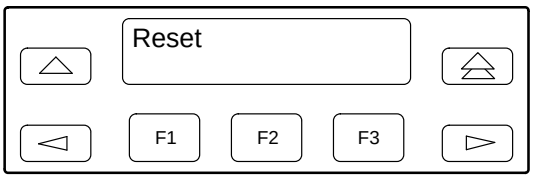
## Reset

Reset causes the modem to stop operation and perform a complete program restart. The modem begins the power-up test sequence that ends with the Top-Level menu displayed on the LCD. Configuration options stored in an Active (Saved) configuration area are copied to the Active (Operating) configuration area.

To access Reset from the Control branch, make the following selection:




Select Reset.




**Reset** appears before the modem performs the power-up diagnostic test sequence.

### *AT Command Equivalent*

The AT command for Reset is Z9.

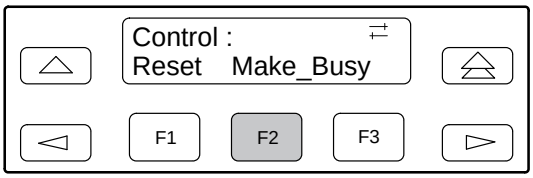
## Make Busy/Remove Make Busy

The Make Busy function forces the modem off-hook so it cannot answer a call. This is often used with PBX systems to permit the busy out of a PBX port for rotary or hunt groups.

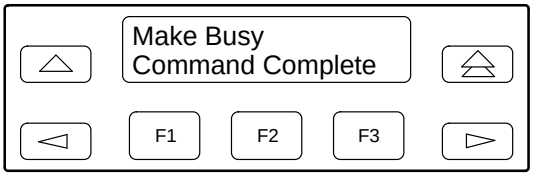
**WARNING**

**To not violate FCC and DOC regulations, this function must only be used behind a user's PBX.**

To access Make Busy from the Control branch, make the following selections:

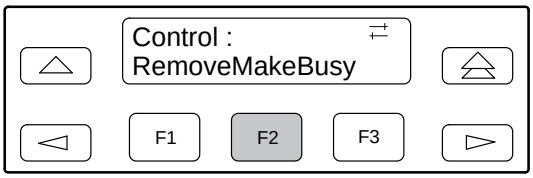



Press the ▻ key until Make Busy appears. Select Make Busy.




The modem is now in a forced busy condition. **Command Complete** appears on the LCD.

To remove the modem from Make Busy mode, press the △ key once and the ▻ key until Remove Make Busy appears.




Press any function key to select RemoveMakeBusy. The message **Command Complete** appears on the LCD.

### *AT Command Equivalent*

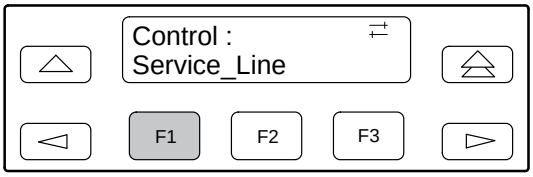
The AT command for Remove Make Busy is H or H0. The AT command for Make Busy is H1.

## Service Line/Disconnect Service Line

The Service Line function allows you to switch a specific 3811*Plus* modem installed in a COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier from normal dial or leased-line operation to service-line operation. This switch only places the modem on the service line. For a connection to be established, you must still use the normal dialing methods as described in Chapter 5, *Call Setup Branch*.

A service line is an extra dial line connected to a COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier. This line is normally shared by up to eight 3811*Plus* modems installed in either Slots 1–8 or Slots 9–16. However, by daisy chaining the service-line connector of one Network Interface Module (NIM) to the service line of another NIM installed in the same carrier, you can permit all 16 modems to share one service line. The service line can also be extended to other carriers in a cabinet. For more information regarding daisy chaining of modems to the service line, refer to the *COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier, Installation Manual*.

To enable service line from the Control branch, make the following selections:




Press the ▻ key until Service Line appears. Select Service Line to switch the modem from its normal dial line to the service line. Now, when the modem places a call, instead of using the dial or leased line, the call is placed on the service line.

To disconnect the modem from the service line and resume normal operation, press the △ key once and the ▻ key until Disc Serv Line appears.

Select Disc Serv Line. The call and service line disconnect and the message **Command Complete** appears on the LCD.

### *AT Command Equivalent*

There is no AT Command Equivalent for Service Line.

## Download Code

The Download Code function sets parameters within the modem when transferring firmware to a remote modem or when receiving firmware upgrades from a locally attached PC-based controller. The latter should only be performed by customer service personnel.

There are two selections under Download Code: Clone to Remote and To Local via DTE. Clone to Remote is used to transfer an exact copy of the firmware currently stored in a 3800*Plus* modem to another 3800*Plus* modem. For this to occur, the modem must be connected to the remote modem via a leased-line network or an established dial-line network. If these prerequisites do not exist, then this selection does not appear on the LCD.

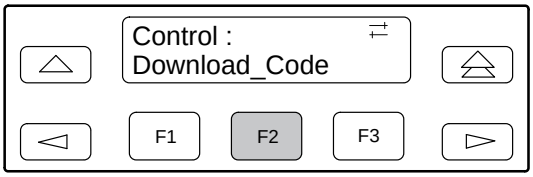
The second selection appearing on the LCD is To Local via DTE. This function permits firmware upgrades to be transferred to a 3800*Plus* modem. This type of download requires a locally attached PC-controller to be connected to the modem's DTE port as well as special download software. **Any downloads using this selection are intended to be performed by customer service personnel only.**

### *Clone To Remote*

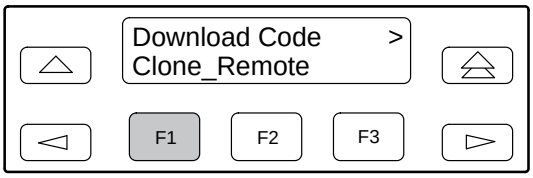
This function allows you to transfer an exact copy of the local modem's firmware to a remote modem. Before using Clone to Remote, perform the following:

- Make sure the modems have an established dial network connection using V.34, V.32*terbo*, V.32bis, or V.32 modulation or a leased-line connection using either V.34, V.32*terbo*, V.32bis, or V.32 modulation.
- Make sure the remote modem's Access From Remote configuration option is enabled.
- Make sure the password (Remote Access Password configuration option) is the same in both the local and remote modems. (For an example of how to change the password, refer to the *Editing and Saving a Configuration Option* section in Chapter 8, *Configure Branch*.)

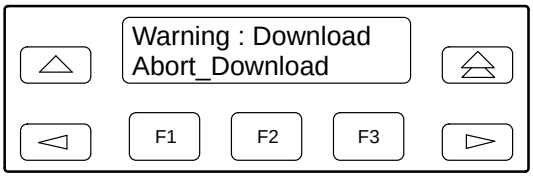
To access Download Code from the Control branch, make the following selections:




Press the ▻ key until Download Code appears. Press any function key to select Download Code.

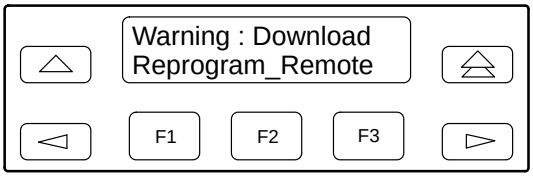



Press any function key to select Clone to Remote.




At this point, if you do not want to continue this process, abort the transfer by selecting any function key. This returns the modem to the Top-Level menu.

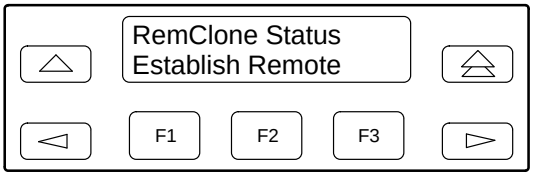
However, to continue with the transfer, press the ▻ key to display the Reprogram Remote selection.



**WARNING**

**Pressing any function key now begins the transfer to the remote modem. This process takes the communications link out of service for several minutes depending upon the data rate of the link (28,800 bps = 5 minutes; 14,400 bps = 10 minutes; 9600 bps = 15 minutes; 4800 bps = 30 minutes). If the Clone to Remote process is started and then interrupted, the remote modem is left in a partially programmed state in which its functional capabilities are limited to those required to initiate and complete another download attempt. If you cannot complete a download, call your service representative.**

Press any function key (F1, F2, or F3) to begin the transfer.



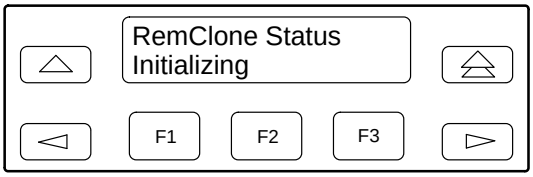

The local modem's LCD displays Establish Remote, indicating the modem is attempting to establish a Remote Cloning Download session with the remote modem.

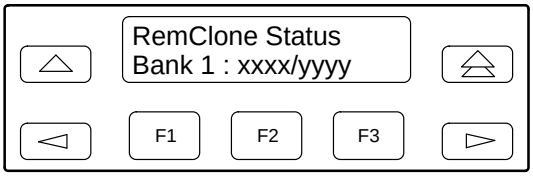
If unsuccessful, the modem remains in the Download Transfer mode. The LCD's top line displays **RemClone Failed** and the bottom line displays one of the following messages:

| | |
|---|---|
| **Incompat Modulat** | The modems are connected, but are using a modulation scheme other than V.34, V.33, V.32bis, V.32, or V.29. |
| **No Response** | The remote modem is not a 3800*Plus* modem or the connection between the two modems is poor. |
| **Access Disabled** | The remote modem's Access from Remote configuration is disabled. |
| **Password Invalid** | The local and remote modems' passwords do not match. |

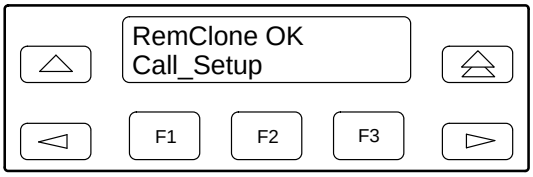
Correct the problem and attempt another download from the local modem. If this fails, contact your service representative.

After successful establishment of a Remote Cloning Download session, the following screens are displayed.



As data banks are transferred, the local and remote LCD's bottom line displays the status of the download process, and the number of records sent versus the total number of records for that bank.




If the download is successful, the local modem displays **Remote Clone OK** and the remote modem displays **Frmware Upgrade**. If the download took place over the dial network, the modems disconnect when the download is complete.

If unsuccessful, **RemClone Failed** is displayed on the LCD's top line. Attempt another download from the local modem. If this fails, contact your service representative.

### *To Local via DTE*

This function is for use only by customer service personnel to transfer new firmware to 3800*Plus* modems.

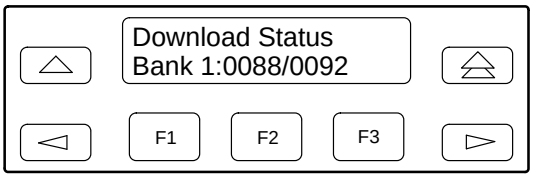
# Automatic Firmware Download

New releases may be available for the 3800*Plus* modem. The latest 3800*Plus* firmware is available at no charge from the Automatic Firmware Download Center. Refer to page A in the front of this document for contact information.

To download the firmware, your modem must be configured for dialing. Save your modem's current configuration to the Customer 1 or Customer 2 memory area, and load the Async Dial factory template. (See Chapter 8, *Configure Branch*, for information about saving and changing configuration options.)

If you have a DTE (a terminal or PC) attached to your modem, informational messages are displayed on it when the modem is connected. These show the amount of time the download will take.

However, a DTE is not required. The download begins without any operator action. When the download begins, the DCP displays download status messages with the data bank number, current block being loaded, and the total number of blocks. There are two data banks.

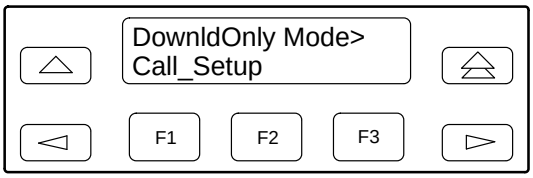



If the modem connects at 14,400 bps, the download takes about 10 minutes. When the download is complete, the modem resets itself and displays a normal status message (such as **Idle:28.8**).

Reload your configuration options from the Customer 1 or Customer 2 memory area that you saved them to.

### Download Failure

If the download is interrupted, the modem is left in a state in which it can only be used to make or receive a call for a download.




If an interruption occurs and your modem is left in this state, repeat the download process by directing the modem to dial the Automatic Firmware Download Center. (See Chapter 5, *Call Setup Branch*, for information about dialing a number using the DCP.) If you are unable to complete the download, call your service representative for assistance.

# Remote Branch 10

Overview . . . . . 10-1
Remote Branch . . . . . 10-1

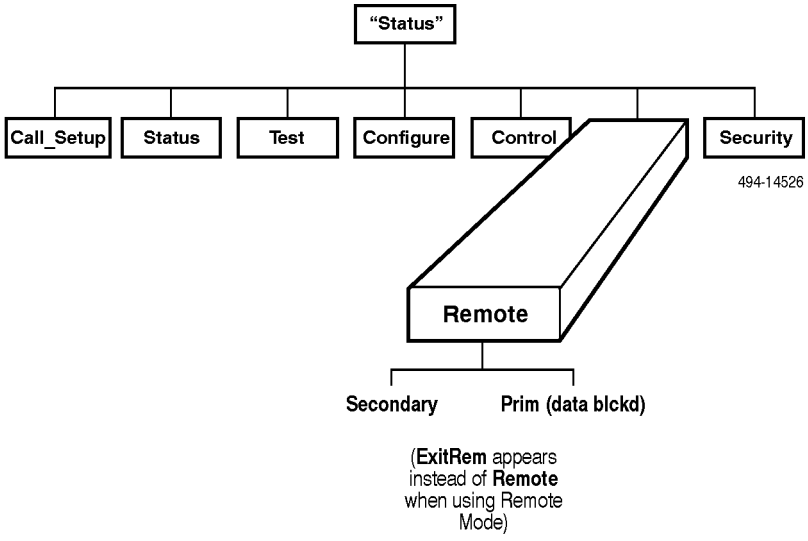
## Overview

The Remote branch of the Top-Level menu allows you to control the remote modem's DCP using the local modem's DCP. This allows you to change configuration options and control test functions in a remote modem. Remote DCP access is only available when using V.34, V.32*terbo*, V.32bis, or V.32 modulation schemes.

## Remote Branch

The following conditions must be met before using the Remote branch:

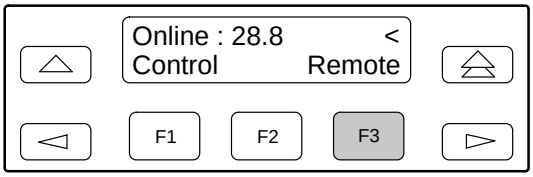
- A connection using either the dial network or leased lines must be established.
- The Access from Remote configuration option must be enabled in the remote modem.
- The Remote Access Password configuration option must be the same for both the local and remote modems.



Remote DCP access is accomplished using either the primary or secondary channel (if available) of the VF line. Using the primary channel gives a much faster response time due to the higher data rate, but it also interrupts data flow because primary data is stopped when Remote mode is active. Once Remote mode is terminated, the primary channel is automatically made available to data transmission.

Unlike primary channel communications, the secondary channel operates at a slower data rate and does not interrupt data flow. (V.34, V.32*terbo*, V.32bis, and V.32 are the only modulations available on the secondary channel.)

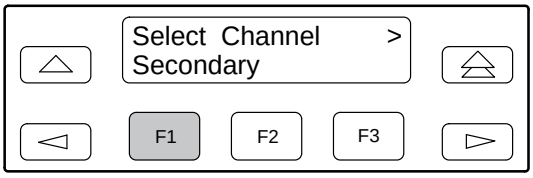
To access the Remote branch, make the following selections:



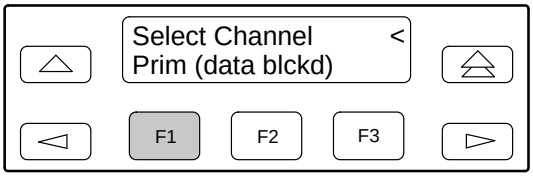

Press the ▻ key until Remote appears. Select Remote.

**NOTE**

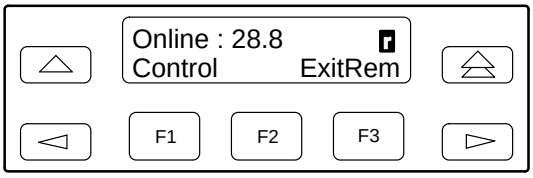
If a connection is not established between a local 3800*Plus* modem and a remote 3800*Plus* modem, the LCD displays **Remote Mode Fail – No Circuit**. Press the ⩓ key to return to the Top Level menu, and dial again.



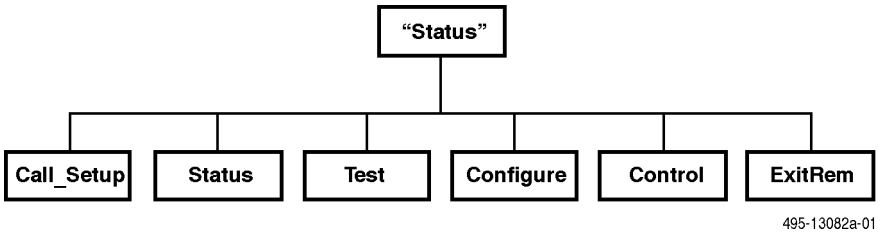

or




If operation over the secondary channel is desired, press any function key to select the secondary channel. **Secondary channel only appears if using V.34, V.32*terbo*, V.32bis, or V.32 modulation.** If operation over the primary channel is desired, press the ▻ key until Prim appears, and press any function key.




If the remote modem accepts the password and the entry is successful, the Top-Level menu of the remote modem appears on the local modem's LCD. An r appears in the upper right-hand corner indicating that what is displayed on your LCD is actually the Top-Level menu of the remote 3800*Plus* modem.




The Top-Level menu of the remote 3800*Plus* modem is similar to the local 3800*Plus* modem with the following exceptions:

- Change Directory is the only function available under the Call Setup branch.
- Self and Local Analog Loop do not appear under the Test branch when using the secondary channel. When using the primary channel, the Test branch does not appear.
- In the Control branch, Make Busy is not available.
- The Security Branch is not available.
- Exit Remote replaces Remote on the local modem's LCD.

To return to local modem operation, select ExitRem. Any changes made to configuration options while using the Remote branch are not saved until you exit the Remote branch.

The following conditions can cause Remote branch access to fail:

- The local modem is not able to communicate with the remote modem because of a poor dial network or leased-line connection, or the remote modem is not a COMSPHERE (3800, 3900, or 3800*Plus* series) modem. If this is the case, the status message **No Response** appears on the LCD.
- If a connection is established but the remote modem's Access from Remote configuration option is disabled, then the status message **Access Disabled** appears on the LCD.
- If a connection is established but the wrong password is stored, the status message **Password Invalid** appears on the LCD. This configuration option must be enabled by the remote user. (See Remote Access Password configuration option in Chapter 8, *Configure Branch*.)

# Security 11


Overview . . . . . 11-1
Originate Access Security . . . . . 11-2
Answer Access Security . . . . . 11-2
Security Branch . . . . . 11-4
Set Access Ctrl . . . . . 11-4
Reset Security . . . . . 11-10
Security Password Entry Techniques . . . . . 11-11
Answer Access Password (VF-Side and DTE-Side Entry Techniques) . . . . . 11-11
Originate Access Password . . . . . 11-12
Database Table Examples . . . . . 11-12


## Overview

**NOTE**

This chapter supports the operation of dial access security for COMSPHERE 3800*Plus* modems. This chapter is self-supporting and can be removed to prevent unwanted knowledge of dial access security operation.

Although the security functions described in this chapter are designed to prevent unwanted user access to your network, the company recognizes that no security system is infallible.

Dial Access Security is an optional feature that allows you to control who has access to your 3800*Plus* modem and ultimately your host DTE.

To take advantage of this security feature, you must create a database of passwords which are stored in the modem's nonvolatile memory. The 3800*Plus* modems can store a maximum of 20 passwords. (A 3811*Plus* with the optional Password Expansion Feature can store up to 3000 passwords.) Each password is assigned a series of parameters that determine the type of security protocol applied to it. This protocol is established in the Security branch of the Top-Level menu. Control of security functions is established in the Security Configuration Options group which is located in the Configure branch of the Top-Level menu. These areas are described in the *Security Branch* section of this chapter and the *Security Configuration Options* section of Chapter 8.

The 3800*Plus* modem uses an outbound and inbound method of security known respectively as Originate Access and Answer Access security. Both methods of security require some type of password entry whether it be included as part of an AT command dial string or entered directly from a remote user's DTE.

## Originate Access Security

Originate Access lets you control who can originate a call from a local modem via the AT command set. This is useful in LAN and modem pooling applications. With Originate Access security, a local user's password is embedded in the AT dial command. If the password is valid, the user can dial out using this modem.

The following example illustrates the format for an Originate Access password:

**ATD%abc123%T9,8005551234** (press Enter)

***Where:*** **ATD** is the AT dial command string.

**%** (percent sign) is the start and stop AT command string interrupt character. The password must be embedded in these characters.

**abc123** is the 10-alphanumeric character originate password.

**T** is the Tone (DTMF) dial modifier.

**,** (comma) is the pause dial modifier.

**98005551234** is the phone number.

Originate Access Security is enabled or disabled by the Set Originate Security group.

## Answer Access Security

The other method of security, which is the primary focus of this chapter, is Answer Access. Answer Access allows the answering modem to restrict entry to the host DTE by ensuring that originating (remote) modems and/or users have been granted proper security access. Access can be granted by using one of three techniques: VF-side password entry, DTE-side password entry, or a combination of both.

### *VF-Side Passwords*

VF-side password entry occurs between modems prior to connecting. Once the VF-side password is entered, no other user intervention is required since security negotiation is handled solely by the modems. When the answering modem is configured for VF entry technique, it goes off-hook and transmits to the originating modem either a secondary dial tone or silence (this choice depends on how the VF Prompt Type option is configured). The originating modem detects this response and transmits its password which corresponds to a preselected series of DTMF tones. Note that VF passwords can be from 1 to 8 digits in length; only decimal digits are permitted. The answering modem verifies the password against its own password database, and if valid, continues with the normal training sequence.

VF-side password works with any autodialer that supports second dial tone or quiet answer and can be implemented in one of three ways. First, the VF password can be embedded within the AT command dial string. Second, a phone number and password can be entered via the diagnostic control panel (DCP). (This is the preferred method for synchronous applications.) And finally, an attached telephone can be used to manually generate DTMF tones for the phone number and password. After the answering modem accepts the password and generates an answerback tone, the originating caller places the modem in Data mode and hangs up the phone.

The following examples illustrate two ways to enter a VF-side password:

**ATDP5551234TW12345678#** (press Enter)

or

**ATDT5551234@12345678#** (press Enter)

***Where:*** **ATD** is the AT dial command.

**P** and **T** are the Pulse dial and Tone (DTMF) dial modifiers.

**5551234** is the phone number.

**W** or **@** is the VF Prompt Tone option setting for second dial tone or quiet answer.

**12345678** is the VF-side password.

**#** is the password termination character.

**NOTE**

While pulse dial can be used to originate the call, DTMF tones must be used for the password. This can be accomplished by using the P and T modifiers appropriately. Refer to the Dial command in Chapter 13, *AT Command Set and S-Registers*, for more on modifiers.

This method of password entry requires that the answering modem be a 3800*Plus* modem. The modem must be configured for VF-side password entry and the originating user must know the correct VF-side password. The originating modem can be another 3800*Plus* modem or any vendor's modem.

Some originating modems may not recognize the W modifier as a wait for second dial tone. If your call disconnects due to a VF Password Timeout or an Unknown VF Password, first verify that the answering 3800*Plus* modem's VF Prompt Type is set for 2nd Dial Tone. Next, verify that the Dial Tone Detect configuration option in the originating modem is enabled. Third, insert several Pause (,) modifiers into the dial string instead of the W modifier. (For the 3800*Plus* modem, each Pause, which is determined by the Pause Time configuration option (S8), is equal to 2 seconds.) This allows a delay between the processing of the phone number by the answering modem and the transmission of the VF-side password by the originating modem.

Some experimentation may be necessary to determine the number of pauses necessary for your call.

## *DTE-Side Passwords*

DTE-side password entry requires the originating user to supply a valid password via his DTE. This method of password entry occurs after the modems' training sequence, but before normal connection. The modems must be configured for asynchronous operation to use this type of security.

When using DTE-side password entry, the modems go through their normal training and error control negotiation. Once complete, the answering modem requests a valid password from the originating user. The originating user must enter, via the DTE, a password that can consist of digits and case-insensitive letters. Note that DTE passwords can be from 1 to 6 characters in length. The answering modem verifies the password against its password database table, and if valid, completes the data connection, thus allowing DTE data to be passed. As with VF-side password entry, the answering modem must be a 3800*Plus* modem and the originating modem can be either a 3800*Plus* modem or any vendor's modem.

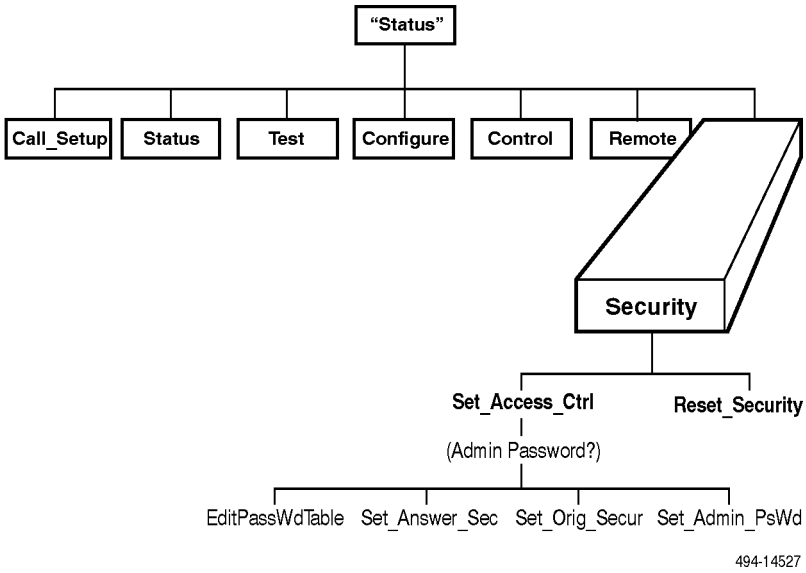
The following example illustrates the format of DTE-side password:

**abc123** (press Enter)

***Where:*** **abc123** is a 10-alphanumeric character number. characters used for DTE-side passwords are case insensitive.

## *Combination of VF-Side and DTE-Side Passwords*

The previously described methods of password entry can be combined to provide two layers of security. In this case, the modems negotiate VF-side password entry prior to training. If successful, the modems connect and then prompt the originating user for a valid password. If correctly entered, the modems connect.



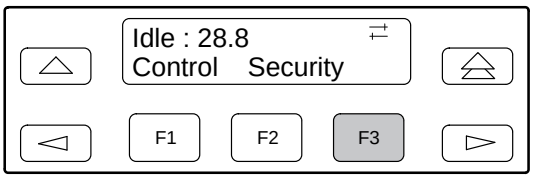

# Security Branch

The Security branch of the Top-Level menu allows you to change and save parameters that are critical to the dial access security password database. This database is a collection of passwords and their associated parameters that determine how the modems control password access. Most of the functions within this branch are protected by an Administrative Password. Once the correct password is entered, these security functions appear on the modem's LCD. The two major functions that appear under the Security branch are Set Access Control and Reset Security.

## Set Access Ctrl

Set Access Control allows you to change security configuration. This function is protected by an Administrative Password. The Reset Security function allows you to reset the Administrative Password, but results in erasure of the modem's security database.

To access Security from the Top-Level menu, make the following selections:




Press the ▻ key until Security appears. Select Security.

Set Access Control allows you to configure critical parameters contained within the security database table that control dial access security. These parameters are protected by an Administrative Password, which is an 8-digit decimal number.

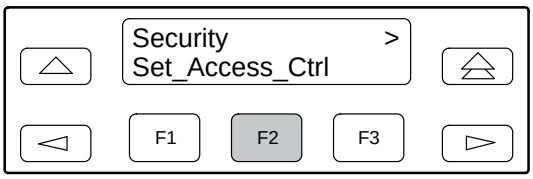
Set Access Control contains the Edit Password Table, Set Answer Security, Set Originate Security, and Set Administrative Password security configuration groups. These groups do not appear on the LCD until the correct Administrative Password is entered.

### *Administrative Password*

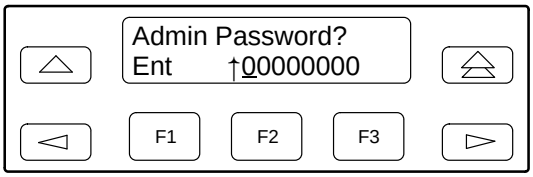
The Administrative Password is an 8-digit decimal number password that allows only authorized users to access Security branch functionality. This password must be entered every time you access the Security branch. This feature is shipped from the factory with the Administrative Password set to 00000000.

Once the correct Administrative Password is entered, the Edit Password Table, Set Answer Security, Set Originate Security, and Set Administrative Password groups can be displayed on the LCD.

To enter your Administrative Password from Set_Access_Ctrl, make the following selections:




Select Set_Access_Ctrl from the Security branch.

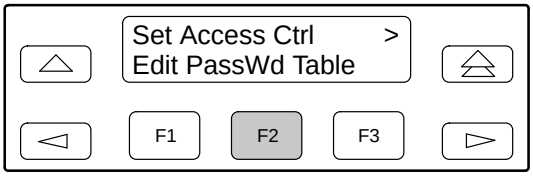



The Administrative Password appears. This occurs every time you enter the Security branch.

Select the F2 (↑) key to increment password values.

Press the ▷ key to move the cursor to the next position.

Continue this sequence until the full Administrative Password value appears and then press Ent.




If the correct value is entered, the EditPassWdTable group appears on the LCD.

Press the ▷ key to scroll the Set Answer Security, Set Originate Security, and Set Administrative Password groups into view.

If an incorrect administrative password is entered, then the message **PassWrd Invalid** appears as well as the last password entered. Enter the correct password value or press the △ or ⏫ key to exit the Security branch.

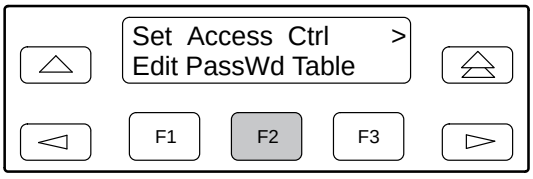
## *EditPasswdTable*

The Password Table is the modem's security database. It contains all essential information for each password stored in the modem's nonvolatile memory. The information associated with each password is known as a record. Records are identified by an index which is a numeric name for a single record. A password's record is retrieved by entering its index.

The Edit Password Table group allows you to view and/or change the modem's security database table. To do this, you must retrieve a password's records by selecting its index. (See *Select Index* section, below.)

The Edit Password Table group consists of the following options: Select Index, Password Type, Edit Password, and Save Edit.

To access EditPasswdTable from Set Access Ctrl, make the following selections:

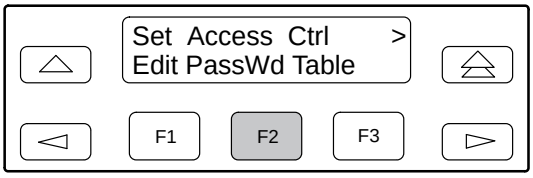



Select EditPassWdTable.

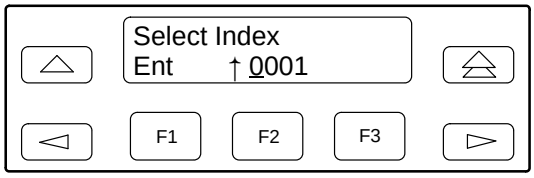
## *Select Index*

Select Index allows a specific record to be retrieved. Index addresses range from 0001 to 0020 for all 3800*Plus* modems and from 0001 to 3000 for a 3811*Plus* with Extended Security. The contents of this record can be viewed, edited, and saved.

To access Select Index, make the following selections:




Select EditPassWdTable.




Select Index appears.

Press the F2 (↑) key to increment index values.

Press the ▻ key to move the cursor to the next position.

Continue this sequence until the desired index appears, and then press Ent.

If an index outside of the range is entered, the message **Index Too Big** appears. Choose an index from the database's current index range.

After selecting an index, the Edit Password Table group's options (Password Type, Edit Password, and Save Edit?) appear in a series of LCD displays.

Keep the following in mind when scrolling down Edit Password Table:

- The current function and index are displayed on the LCD's top line.
- The LCD's bottom line displays Nxt and all selections available for the displayed security option.
- Nxt indicates that more options are available by scrolling down. It also indicates that the value displayed on the LCD is the current setting.
- Use the ◅ and ▻ keys to move selections into view.
- Use the F2 and F3 keys to choose selections.
- If no changes have been made, and the ⏏ key is pressed, the LCD returns to the Top-Level menu.
- If changes have been made, and the △ or ⏏ key is pressed, then Save Edit? appears on the LCD.

Table 11-1 describes the settings of the Edit Table Password group options.

**Table 11-1**
**Edit Password Table Group Options**

| |
|---|
| **PsWdType xxxx**<br>**Nxt Cleared DTE Entry VF_Entry VF_plus_DTE** |
| Password Type. Indicates whether this index location is configured for VF-side password, DTE-side password, or both. Cleared displays for an index location that contains no valid entry. Note that this option only identifies the type of password used. For proper operation, the type of password selected must be consistent with the type of security used. Refer to the Set Answer Security group option found later in this chapter.<br><br>**xxxx** – Indicates the selected index location.<br><br>**Cleared** – Indicates that the index location does not contain any valid selections and is currently unused.<br><br>**DTE Entry** – Indicates that this index's password is configured for DTE-side password entry. Special requirements apply when using DTE passwords if the Set Answer Security option (Answer Security mode) is set to VF_&_DTE or VF_w/_DTE. Refer to the note following VF plus DTE.<br><br>**VF Entry** – Indicates that this index's password is configured for VF-side password entry. This selection requires that the Set Answer Security option (Answer Security mode) be set to VF_&_DTE.<br><br>**VF plus DTE** – Indicates that both layers of password entry are used with this index's password. This location is configured so that the answering modem sends a prompt for the DTE-side password after receiving a valid VF-side password. This setting requires that the Set Answer Security option be set to VF_&_DTE or VF_w/_DTE.<br><br>**NOTE:** If the Set Answer Security option (Answer Security mode) is set to VF_&_DTE or VF_w/_DTE, special requirements apply in order to use passwords with their type set to DTE_Entry. The originating caller must first enter a valid VF password. If the VF password entered is configured in the security database with the type VF_plus_DTE, the user is then required to enter a password configured in the database table with the type DTE_Entry. In the case of VF_w/_DTE mode, the DTE Entry password must immediately follow the VF_plus_DTE password in the password table. |
| **Edit PsWd xxxx**<br>**Nxt ↑ yyyyyyyy or zzzzzz** |
| Edit Password. Allows the password associated with this index to be changed.<br><br>**NOTE:** This security option does not appear if the Password Type option is set for Cleared.<br><br>**xxxx** – Indicates the current index location value.<br><br>**yyyyyyyy** – Indicates the current password value for this index. If the Password Type is VF_Entry or VF_plus_DTE, then the password value is an 8-digit decimal number.<br><br>**zzzzzz** – Indicates the current password value for this index. If Password Type is configured for DTE_Entry, then the password value is a 10-character alphanumeric number. |
| **Save Edit? xxxx**<br>**Edit Save Yes No** |
| Save Edit. Saves any changes made in the EditPassWdTable group.<br><br>**xxxx** – Indicates the current index field value.<br><br>**Edit** – Returns the LCD to the Password Type option and does not save any changes made to the index or password table.<br><br>**Save** – Saves changes made to the index or Password Table. Once selected, the Select Index screen appears and increments to the next index value.<br><br>**Yes No** – Appears only if changes are made to any of the options within the Password Table and the ⌃ or ⌃⌃ key is pressed before reaching the Save Edit? option. After deciding whether or not to save changes, the LCD displays Select Index and increments to the next index value. |

### *Set Answer Sec*

Set Answer Security determines if dial access security is enabled or disabled. This method of inbound security is configured in the answering modem. Although this also appears under the Security Configuration Option group, it can only be changed from the Set Answer Sec LCD display in the Security branch.

To access Set_Answer_Sec from Set Access Ctrl, make the following selections:

Press the key until Set_Answer_Sec appears.

Select Set_Answer_Sec.

Table 11-2 describes the settings of the Set Answer Security group option.

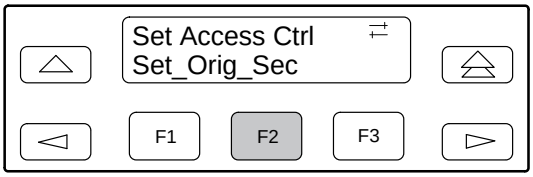
**Table 11-2**
**Set Answer Security Group Options**

| **Set Answer Sec**<br>**No_Answ_Sec DTE_Only VF_&_DTE VF_w/_DTE** |
|---|
| Set Answer Security. Is the primary method for enabling or disabling the dial access security function. |
| **No Answer Security** – Disables the dial access security feature. |
| **DTE Only** – The answering modem is enabled for security. The originating user must supply a password when prompted. |
| Note that a call attempt never enters data mode if the answering modem is configured for DTE_Only and the originating caller attempts to enter a password using only the VF-side password entry technique. |
| **NOTE:** In modem pooling applications where modems are connected to a multiline hunt group (rotary), all modems must have this configuration option set to the same value. |
| **VF_&_DTE** – The answering modem is enabled for security. The modems negotiate security using the VF-side password entry technique protocol. If successful, and the Password Type for this particular VF password is set for VF_&_DTE, a password is requested from the originating user. If successful, the modems connect and can pass data. |
| **NOTE:** A call attempt fails if the answering modem is configured for VF_&_DTE and the originating caller does not first enter a VF-side password. |
| **VF_w/_DTE** – Allows specification of related VF-Side and DTE-side password pairs. In this configuration, a DTE-side password submitted must be a valid Password Table entry, and must match the particular entry associated with the valid VF-side password that was submitted. |
| The passwords are associated with each other by their index in the Password Table: VF_plus_DTE passwords occupy odd-numbered index locations; their DTE_Entry counterparts occupy the even-numbered index locations that immediately follow. So, for example, if a VF-side password is entered that matches the entry in index location 11, the DTE-side password subsequently entered must match the entry in index location 12. |
| VF_plus_DTE passwords must be unique in a VF_w/_DTE configuration. An attached DTE in asynchronous operation is required for DTE-side password entry. |
| Up to 10 password pairs are permitted. On the 3811*Plus* modem this can be optionally increased with the Expanded Password Table feature, which permits 1500 password pairs. |

### *Set Orig Sec*

Set Originate Security controls whether or not the modem can originate a call using AT commands when the dial access security feature is installed. This method of outbound security only applies to modems originating a call.

To access Set_Orig_Sec from Set Access Ctrl, make the following selections:




Press the ▻ key until Set_Orig_Sec appears.

Select Set_Orig_Sec.

Table 11-3 describes the settings of the Set Originate Security group option.

**Table 11-3**
**Set Originate Security Group Options**

| **Set Orig Sec**<br>**No_OrigSec EnaOrigSec** |
|---|
| Set Originate Security. Controls the security protection for origination of calls when AT commands are used. |
| The originate password must be included in all AT dial command strings if this configuration option is enabled. If not included, or incorrectly entered, the message **ERROR** is returned to the DTE. The Originate Security password must be defined as a DTE_Entry password type. |
| **No Originate Security** – Disables originate security so that a modem can originate a call using AT commands. |
| **Enable Originate Security** – When using AT commands, the modem will only place a call if a valid password is entered along with an AT dial command. If the password is not entered, then **ERROR** is returned to the DTE, and the dial command is canceled. |

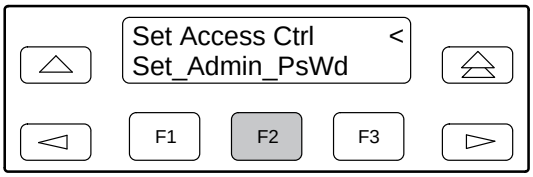
### Set Admin PsWd

Set Administrative Password is used to change the Administrative Password value. The Administrative Password is an 8-digit decimal number that allows authorized users to enter the Access Security Control function.

**NOTE**

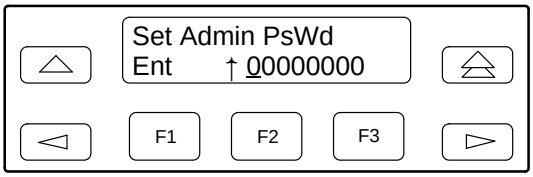
If this value is forgotten, then the only way to access any of the security functions is by selecting Reset Security. This restores the password to a known value*, but erases the contents of the modem's security database.

To change the Administrative Password, make the following selections:




Press ▻ until Set_Admin_PsWd appears.

Select Set_Admin_PsWd.




The Administrative Password appears.

Press the F2 (↑) key to increment password values.

Press the ▻ key to move the cursor to the next position. Continue this sequence until the new password value is entered.

Press the F1 key to save the new password value.

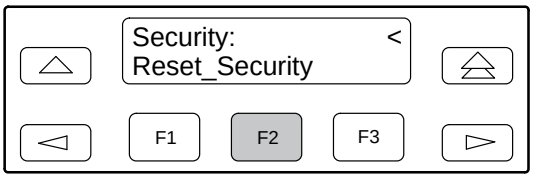
## Reset Security

Reset Security is the second major function within the Security branch of the Top-Level menu. It erases all contents of the security database table and resets all index locations to Cleared. Two selections appear under Reset Security: Abort Security Reset and Erase All PassWords. Use Reset Security if you want to redo the entire security database table.

**CAUTION**

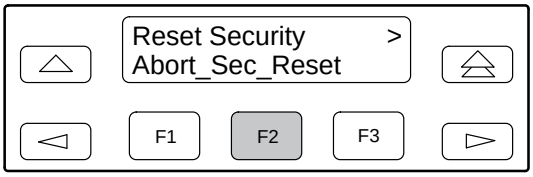
**This function can be used as a last resort if the Administrative Password is no longer known. This function causes the Administrative Password to default to the Reset Default password, and erases the contents of the database table.**

To reset security, make the following selections:



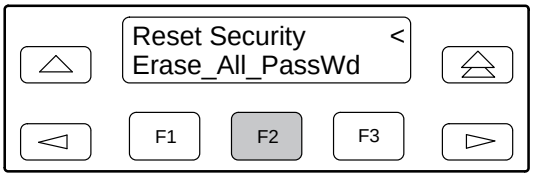

From the Security branch, press ▻ until Reset_Security appears.

Select Reset_Security.




To abort this function, select Abort_Sec_Reset. Nothing is erased and the LCD returns to the main security display.

* This value appears as a single number on the last page of this document.




To reset security, press ▻ until Erase_All_PassWd appears on the LCD.

Select Erase_All_PassWd.

The entire security database is erased and the Administrative Password defaults to the Reset Default password value. This value appears as a single number on the last page of this document.

# Security Password Entry Techniques

The previous sections described how to set up and configure your network for dial access security. Once configured and enabled, you must now supply a password to originate or answer a call.

The following examples demonstrate how to enter an Answer Access security password string and an Originate Access password string. Note that dial access security messages, that may appear on the LCD, are listed in Table 4-3 in Chapter 4.

## Answer Access Password (VF-Side and DTE-Side Entry Techniques)

Answer Access password security uses two password entry techniques: VF-side password and DTE-side password entry. A VF-side password consists of DTMF tones and is entered by the originating caller via the AT command set, the DCP, or manually with an attached telephone.

A VF-side password can be entered with the AT dial command. The following examples illustrate two ways to enter a VF-side password:

**ATDT5551234W12345678#**

or

**ATDP5551234T@12345678#**

***PRESS:*** Enter

***Where:*** **ATD** is the AT dial command.

**P** and **T** are Pulse dial and Tone (DTMF) dial modifiers.

**5551234** is the phone number.

**W** is the second dial tone dial modifiers.

**@** is the wait for quiet answer dial modifiers.

**12345678** is the password. VF-side passwords must consist of 1–8 decimal digits.

**#** is the password terminator character.

> **NOTE**
>
> While pulse dial can be used to originate the call, DTMF tones must be used for the password. This can be accomplished by using the P and T modifiers appropriately. Refer to the Dial command in Chapter 13, *AT Command Set and S-Registers*, for more information about modifiers.

Some originating modems may not recognize the W modifier as a wait for second dial tone. If your call disconnects due to a VF Password Timeout or an Unknown VF Password, first verify that the answering 3800*Plus* modem's VF Prompt Type is set for 2nd Dial Tone. Next, verify that the Dial Tone Detect configuration option in the originating modem is enabled. Third, insert several Pause (,) modifiers into the dial string instead of the W modifier. (For the 3800*Plus* modem, each Pause, which is determined by the Pause Time configuration option (S8), is equal to 2 seconds.) This allows a delay between the processing of the phone number by the answering modem and the transmission of the VF-side password by the originating modem.

Some experimentation may be necessary to determine the number of pauses necessary for your call.

A DTE-side password is entered after the modems have trained, but before a normal connection is established. The following example illustrates how to enter a DTE-side password:

***TYPE:*** **abc123**

***PRESS:*** Enter

***Where:*** **abc123** is a 10-alphanumeric character password. characters used for DTE-side passwords are case-insensitive. DTE-side passwords can be from 1 to 6 characters in length.

If a valid password is entered, then the modems connect and data can pass.

### Originate Access Password

An Originate Access password is entered by a local user to gain access to a local 3800*Plus* modem. This password is embedded in the AT dial command and cannot be entered from the diagnostic control panel (DCP). The password must be defined as a DTE_Entry type in the password table.

The following example describes how to enter an Originate Access security password:

***TYPE:*** **ATD%abc123%T9,8005551234**

***PRESS:*** Enter

***Where:*** **ATD** is the AT dial command.

**%** is the start and stop dial string command interrupt characters; the Originate Access password must be enclosed by these characters.

**abc123** is the 10-alphanumeric character Originate Access password.

**T** is the Tone (DTMF) dial modifier.

Comma **(,)** is a pause dial parameter.

**98005551234** is the phone number.

## Database Table Examples

The following examples illustrate possible database tables in which the password type is configured for VF Entry, DTE Entry or a combination of VF, DTE, and VF plus DTE Entry. These tables are shown for illustrative purposes only. Passwords shown are not representative of good password selections.

**NOTE**

The **Assigned to** column is not stored in the modem.

Table 11-4 is an example of a database table with passwords configured for VF Entry only. This type of password is entered within the AT command dial string.

**Table 11-4**
**Security Database Table**
**Using VF-Side Passwords**

| VF Password Only | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Index** | **Password** | **Type** | **Assigned to** |
| 21 | 1 | VF_Entry | Denver office |
| 31 | 12 | VF_Entry | Chicago office |
| 41 | 1212 | VF_Entry | Dallas office |
| 51 | 953246 | VF_Entry | Miami office, modem 1 |
| 52 | 46958373 | VF_Entry | Miami office, modem 2 |
| 61 | 32562682 | VF_Entry | Atlanta office |

Table 11-5 is an example of a database table with passwords configured for DTE Entry only. This type of password is entered via the originating user's DTE.

**Table 11-5**
**Security Database Table**
**Using DTE-Side Password**

| DTE Password Only | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Index** | **Password** | **Type** | **Assigned to** |
| 1001 | winter | DTE_Entry | User A |
| 1002 | summer | DTE_Entry | User B |
| 1003 | spring | DTE_Entry | User C |
| 1004 | fall | DTE_Entry | User D |
| 1005 | z | DTE_Entry | User E |
| 1006 | 3g8sX4 | DTE_Entry | User F |

Table 11-6 is an example of a security database table that uses a mixture of VF and DTE passwords.

**Table 11-6**
**Security Database Table Using**
**Both VF-Side and DTE-Side Password**

| VF and DTE Passwords | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Index** | **Password** | **Type** | **Assigned to** |
| 121 | 1 | VF_Entry | Denver office* |
| 131 | 12 | VF_plus_DTE | Chicago office** |
| 141 | 1212 | VF_plus_DTE | Dallas office** |
| 151 | 953246 | VF_plus_DTE | Miami office, modem 1** |
| 152 | 46958373 | VF_plus_DTE | Miami office, modem 2** |
| 161 | 32562682 | VF_Entry | Atlanta office* |
| 1131 | winter | DTE_Entry | User C, Chicago office** |
| 1141 | summer | DTE_Entry | User A, Dallas office** |
| 1142 | spring | DTE_Entry | User B, Dallas office** |
| 1151 | fall | DTE_Entry | User D, Miami office** |
| 1152 | z | DTE_Entry | User E, Miami office** |
| 1153 | 3g8sX4 | DTE_Entry | User F, Miami office** |

* Users in the Denver and Atlanta offices are connected to the DTE after entering a valid VF password (and the modems train and negotiate error control) without entering a DTE password.

** Users at the Chicago, Dallas, and Miami offices are required to enter a DTE password after the VF password is entered via the AT dial command.

Table 11-7 is an example of a security database table that uses paired VF and DTE passwords for use in VF_w/_DTE answer security mode.

**Table 11-7**
**Security Database Table Using Paired VF-Side and DTE-Side Passwords**

| VF and DTE Passwords | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Index** | **Password** | **Type** | **Assigned to** |
| 02 | user1 | DTE_Entry | User A Logon ID* |
| 03 | 00110002 | VF_plus_DTE | User B, Denver office |
| 04 | ralph | DTE_Entry | User B Logon ID* |
| 05 | 4695873 | VF_plus_DTE | Berlin office |
| 06 | guest | DTE_Entry | Guest Logon ID* |
| 07 | 4695873 | VF_plus_DTE | Berlin office |
| 08 | actmgr | DTE_Entry | Account Manager Logon ID* |
| 09 | 350647 | VF_plus_DTE | User C |
| 10 | miami | DTE_Entry | Miami office* |
| 11 | 00159766 | VF_plus_DTE | User D |
| 12 | miami | DTE_Entry | Miami office* |

* For this password to be valid, the VF_plus_DTE password entered must be the one immediately preceding the DTE_Entry password in the table.

# Fax Operation 12

Overview . . . . . 12-1
Fax Operation . . . . . 12-1

## Overview

The procedures for sending and receiving facsimile documents with your modem depend on the fax software you use. This chapter does not contain specific procedures, but rather information that may make it easier for you to use the documentation that came with your fax software.

## Fax Operation

Your modem, in combination with your computer and fax software, is capable of emulating the functions of a fax machine. You can use it to send and receive fax files in communication with another fax modem, or with a standard fax machine. These fax files are images turned into the sort of data that can be stored in your computer.

Fax machines and fax modems use special protocols different from those used by standard modems. The device you intend to communicate with must be compatible with your modem, which means that it must be capable of using the same protocol. Your 3800*Plus* modem supports Class 1 (EIA 578) and Class 2 (EIA/TIA SP-2388) Group III fax, using V.17, V.29, or V.27ter modulations.

Before you can send or receive a fax, the following must be true:

- You must have fax software installed on your computer.
- Your modem must be online with a compatible fax modem or fax machine.
- You must have configured your modem according to the specifications of your fax software manual. For example:
  - — Some fax software requires that the modem have Auto-Answer disabled. You can set this using the AutoAnswerRing# configuration option under the Line Dialer branch, or by issuing the ATS0=0 command.
  - — Some fax software requires that the modem use software flow control. You can set this using the FlwCntlofDTE and FlwCntlofMdm configuration options under the V.42/MNP/Buffer branch, or by issuing an AT\Q1 command.
  - — DTR Action should be set for standard RS-232D operation. Use the Stndrd_RS232 setting of DTR Action (in the DTE Interface configuration options group), or the AT&D2 command.
  - — LSD (Line Signal Detect) Control should be set for standard RS-232D operation. Use the Stndrd_RS232 setting of LSD Control (in the DTE Interface configuration options group), or the AT&C1 command.
  - — Data should be buffered during Error Control (EC) negotiation. Use the Enable setting of EC Negotiate Bufr (in the V.42/MNP/Buffer configuration options group), or the AT\C1 command.

There are no Diagnostic Control Panel (DCP) functions unique to fax operation. If your fax software requires that you change the configuration of your modem, see the appropriate sections of Chapter 8, *Configure Branch*.

The DCP is disabled during fax operation.

Your fax software uses AT commands to tell the modem what to do. These commands, and the replies your modem makes (such as “OK”) may be displayed on your computer terminal during fax operation, but this depends on your software. You do not have to issue AT commands yourself, unless you use AT commands to configure the modem.

For more information about fax operation, see the manual that came with your fax software.

# AT Command Set and S-Registers 13


Overview . . . . . 13-1
Operating Modes . . . . . 13-1
Switching Between Data Mode and Online Command Mode . . . . . 13-1
Command Guidelines . . . . . 13-2
AT Command List . . . . . 13-2
AT Command Format . . . . . 13-5
S-Register List . . . . . 13-14
S-Register Format . . . . . 13-14


## Overview

The AT command set provides an alternative method to the front panel for entering commands that control the operation and configuration of the 3800*Plus* modems. AT commands are issued from an asynchronous DTE (such as a personal computer). This chapter explains how to use AT commands and lists the modifiers for all AT commands supported by the 3800*Plus* modems.

## Operating Modes

The 3800*Plus* modem has two operating modes: Command mode and Data mode. Before a modem goes online (establishes a successful connection with a remote modem), it is considered to be in Command mode, an idle state where you can modify its operating parameters or issue modem commands.

In Command mode, any command issued is acknowledged with a response in either words or digits known as a result code. Refer to Appendix B for a list of result codes.

Once the modems go online, either by answering or originating a call, they automatically switch to Data mode. Data mode is a state where any entries made from the DTE are considered data and are transmitted and received between modems. The modems remain in Data mode until the connection is broken or until they are forced into online Command mode using the escape sequence.

### Switching Between Data Mode and Online Command Mode

Sometimes it is necessary to change operating parameters while the modems are online. The escape sequence allows you to toggle the modem between Data mode and online Command mode while maintaining a connection with the remote modem. This is accomplished using the escape sequence (+++) to exit Data mode and the O command to return to Data mode.

#### *Escape Sequence and Escape Guard Time*

The escape sequence is only issued when the modem is online and in Data mode. The 3800*Plus* modem uses three consecutive plus (+) characters as the escape sequence. (To change this value, refer to S-register S2 discussed later in Table 13-2 in the *S-Register Format* section.)

To prevent the modem from interpreting an embedded +++ in data as an escape sequence, the Escape Guard Time value determines the length of the pause before and after the escape sequence is issued. The 3800*Plus* modem uses a one second pause as the Escape Guard Time. (To change this value, refer to S-Register S12 discussed later in Table 13-2 in the *S-Register Format* section.)

To enter online Command mode while in Data mode, enter the following sequence:

***TYPE:*** +++

Use the O command to return to Data mode from online Command mode. Enter the following command:

***TYPE:*** ATO

***PRESS:*** Enter

# Command Guidelines

Review the following guidelines before using any AT Commands.

- The escape sequence (+++) is used to enter online Command mode from Data mode.
- The asynchronous character format for the AT command set must be one of the following:
  - — 8 data bits + no parity + 1 stop bit.
  - — 7 data bits + no parity + 2 stop bits.
  - — 7 data bits + parity + 1 stop bit (parity can be odd, even, mark, or space).
- All commands (except A/ (repeat last command) and +++) must begin with the characters AT and end by pressing the Enter key. The AT (or at) prefix clears the command buffer and matches the modem speed and parity to that of the DTE. Commands can be upper- or lowercase, but the modem will not recognize mixed case prefixes (At or aT).
- Commands can be entered one at a time or in strings. Strings can have up to 40 characters after the AT prefix. You can use spaces, hyphens (–), and parentheses ( ) as fillers to make the commands easier to read; the modem ignores these fillers and they are not counted among the characters which make up the command string. Commands must be entered on one line and end with the carriage return character (Enter key).
- Commands with the suffix *n* have several options associated with them. For example, in the L*n* command, L1 sets the speaker volume to Low and L3 sets the speaker volume to High. If no value is entered for the *n* suffix, the modem assumes a zero (0) value.
- The A/ command (without pressing the Enter key) causes the modem to repeat the last command entered.
- Valid commands are acknowledged with numeric or word result codes (unless the result codes have been disabled using the Q1 command). Appendix B lists result codes with numeric and word equivalents.

### *Any-Key Abort*

The any-key abort function aborts a call establishment attempt when a character is received from the DTE under the following conditions:

- The AT command set is enabled.
- The modem is in the process of answering or originating a call.

# AT Command List

AT commands are issued from an asynchronous DTE, such as a PC, and control the modem's operation and software configuration. AT commands are only applicable when the DTE Dialer Type configuration option is set for AT. (See &Mn and &Qn commands.)

Table 13-1 lists all AT commands supported by the 3800*Plus* modem. The first column lists the AT command. The second column defines and lists all possible values for that command. The Async Dial factory default is listed in **bold**. The third column lists the key sequence used to enter the equivalent front panel command. Use this reference to locate commands in Chapters 4 through 10 if further description is necessary.

## AT Command Format

AT commands are entered in Command mode using the following format:

***TYPE:*** AT***X****n*

***Where:*** *X* is the AT command and *n* is the specific value for that command.

***PRESS:*** Enter

In Table 13-1, the value for *X* is listed in the **AT Command** column and the value for *n* is listed in the **Description** column.

**Table 13-1**
**(1 of 11)**
**3800*Plus* AT Commands**

| AT Command | Description | Front Panel Branch |
|---|---|---|
| A/ | **Repeat Last Command**<br>Re-executes last command string. (Not to be preceded with AT or followed by pressing the Return key.) | |
| A | **Answer Mode**<br>Goes off-hook and attempts to establish a connection without waiting for a ring. | None |
| D*n* | **Dial**<br>Begins the dialing sequence. The dial string n (modifiers and telephone number) is entered after the D command.<br>Any digit 0–9, * , # , A, B, C, D, may be dialed as a DTMF tone. Only the digits 0–9 can be dialed in Pulse Dial mode.<br>If any character is received from the DTE before the modem goes online, the dial sequence is aborted. This is known as any-key abort.<br>The following example shows how to dial through a PBX. The dial string consists of the command string and the telephone number:<br>*ATD9W*5551234<br>Command String / Telephone Number<br>Dial String<br>Modifiers include the following parameters:<br>**T** – Tone (DTMF) dial. Any digit 0–9, * , #, A, B, C, or D can be dialed as tone.<br>**P** – Pulse dial. Only the digits 0–9 can be dialed in Pulse Dial mode.<br>**NOTE:** Once a dialing method (tone or pulse) has been specified, it will only remain active until the end of that dial string. The factory setting is tone dial.<br>**W** or **+** – Wait for dial tone. Modem waits for a second dial tone before processing the dial string. This can be the initial dial tone or a second tone received when dialing through a tandem PBX (for example, 9+555-6789), or when invoking special features (for example, 70#W555-6789, where 70# disables Call Waiting).<br>**R** – Reverse Dial mode. Causes the originating modem to send out an answertone once it no longer detects ringback. (Ringback is the ring you hear at the originating site when making a call.) The R parameter must be the last character in the dial string. For correct operation, at least one ringback must be detected; therefore, the remote modem should be configured to answer on the second ring or subsequent rings.<br>@ – Quiet answer. Wait for five seconds of silence after dialing the number. If the silence is not detected, the modem sends either a NO ANSWER result to the DTE.<br>**!** – Hook flash. This causes the modem to go on-hook for 0.5 seconds then return to off-hook. | None |

**Table 13-1**
**(2 of 11)**
**3800*Plus* AT Commands**

| AT Command | Description | Front Panel Branch |
|---|---|---|
| D*n* (Cont'd) | **,** – Pause. Causes the modem to pause before processing the next character in the dial string. The length of this pause is determined by the setting of the Pause Time configuration option (see Line Dialer configuration option group) or by value held in S-register S8.<br>**;** – Return to Command mode. Modem returns to Command mode after dialing a number without disconnecting the call. This is useful when the number exceeds 40 characters, or when the wait time between parts of a dial string is unknown. This modifier disables the any-key abort function.<br>**Space, –** , and **( )** . These characters are ignored by the dial string and can be included in the dial string to enhance readability. | |
| DS=*n* | **Dial Stored Number**<br>Dials the number stored in Location *n* (1–10). (To store a telephone number, refer to the &Z*n=x* command.)<br>If any character is received from the DTE before the modem goes online, the dial sequence is aborted. This is known as any-key abort. | Call Setup\Dial\<br>Dial Directory: |
| E*n* | **Command Character Echo**<br>E0 Disables echo to the DTE.<br>**E1** Enables echo to the DTE. | Configure\Edit\<br>DTE Dialer |
| H*n* | **Hook Switch Control**<br>H0 Modem goes on-hook.<br>H1 Modem goes off-hook. | H0: Call Setup\Disconnect<br>*or*<br>Control\Remove Make Busy<br>H1: Control\ Make Busy |
| I*n* | **Identification**<br>I0 Displays product code; default is 144.<br>I1 Displays 3-digit firmware revision number.<br>I2 Performs an EPROM check.<br>I3 Displays the modem's serial number.<br>I4 Displays the modem's model number. The model number of a 3810*Plus* begins with 3980. The model number of a 3811*Plus* begins with 3981. The model number of a 3820*Plus* begins with 3982.<br>I5 Displays the part number of the circuit card.<br>I6 Displays the firmware release number.<br>I9 Displays 3-digit firmware revision number (same as I1).<br>I10=*n* Changes the value of the product code displayed by the I0 command; *n* is a number from 0 to 4:<br>I10=0 sets product code to 144<br>I10=1 sets product code to 240<br>I10=2 sets product code to 480<br>I10=3 sets product code to 960<br>I10=4 sets product code to 120<br>I11 Performs a checksum of the modem's firmware and displays the results in hexadecimal. (There is no DCP equivalent of this command.)<br>I19 Displays the entire firmware revision level. | Status\Identity |

**Table 13-1**
**(3 of 11)**
**3800*Plus* AT Commands**

| AT Command | Description | Front Panel Branch |
|---|---|---|
| L*n* | **Speaker Volume**<br>L0 Selects low volume.<br>L1 Selects low volume.<br>**L2** Selects medium volume<br>L3 Selects high volume. | Control\Speaker<br>Configure\Edit\Misc |
| M*n* | **Speaker On/Off**<br>M0 Speaker always off.<br>**M1** Speaker on until carrier signal is detected.<br>M2 Speaker always on. | Control\Speaker<br>Configure\Edit\Misc |
| O | **Return to Online or Data Mode**<br>Returns modem to Data mode from Online Command mode. | None |
| P | **Pulse Dial**<br>Sets the modem for pulse dial mode. See the D*n* command. | Configure\Edit\<br>Line Dialer |
| Q*n* | **Result Codes**<br>**Q0** Enables modem to send result codes to the DTE.<br>Q1 Disables modem from sending result codes to the DTE.<br>Q2 Enables in Originate mode only for modem to send result codes to the DTE. Required for most UNIX® applications. | Configure\Edit\<br>DTE Dialer |
| S*r*=*n* | **Change S-Register**<br>Changes contents of S-register (where *r* is the S-Register, and *n* is the new value). | None |
| S*r*? | **Display S-Register**<br>Displays value of S-register where *r* is the S-register number. | None |
| T | **Tone Dial**<br>Sets the modem for tone dial mode. | Configure\Edit\<br>Line Dialer |
| V*n* | **Result Codes Format**<br>V0 Displays result codes in Number (1) format digits.<br>**V1** Displays result codes as text.<br>V2 Displays result codes in Number (2) format (digits). | Configure\Edit\<br>DTE Dialer |

**Table 13-1**
**(4 of 11)**
**3800*Plus* AT Commands**

| AT Command | Description | Front Panel Branch |
|---|---|---|
| X*n* | **Extended Result Code, Dial Tone Detect, and Busy Tone Detect Configuration Options**<br><br>X0 Disable / Disable / Disable<br>X1 Enable / Disable / Disable<br>X2 Enable / Enable / Disable<br>X3 Enable / Disable / Enable<br>X4 Enable / Enable / Enable<br>X5 Add/EC / Enable / Enable<br>X6 Add/V42,MNP / Enable / Enable<br>X7 Use DTE Rate / Enable / Enable<br>(*Extended Result Code* / *Dial Tone Detect* / *Busy Tone Detect*)<br><br>*Extended Result Code*<br>**Enable**. Displays all result codes listed in Appendix B except for error control suffix.<br>Disable. Only displays OK, CONNECT, RING, NO CARRIER, ERROR.<br>Add/EC. Displays result codes with /EC suffix. Add/V42,MNP. Displays result codes with either V.42 or MNP suffix. Use DTE Rate. Displays DTE data rate instead of line rate.<br>Add/V42,MNP. Displays result codes with either V.42 or MNP suffix.<br>Use DTE Rate. Displays DTE data rate instead of line rate.<br><br>*Dial Tone Detect*<br>**Enable**. Sets the modem for dial tone detect.<br>Disable. Sets the modem for blind dialing.<br><br>*Busy Tone Detect*<br>**Enable**. Modem monitors for busy tone.<br>Disable. Modem ignores busy tone. | Extended Result Code: Configure\Edit\DTE Dialer<br>Dial Tone Detect: Configure\Edit\ Line Dialer<br>Busy Tone Detect: Configure\Edit\ Line Dialer |
| Y*n* | **Long Space Disconnect**<br>Y0 Disable. Ignores long space.<br>**Y1** Enable**.** Disconnects if long space is detected. Enables transmission of a long space. | Configure\Edit\ Line Dialer |
| Z*n* | **Reset and Load Active**<br>Z0 Loads configuration options from Active (Saved) to Active (Operating).<br>Z1 Loads configuration options from Customer 1 to Active (Operating).<br>Z2 Loads configuration from Customer 2 to Active (Operating).<br>Z3 Loads configuration options from Active (Saved) to Active (Operating) and performs a reset (if the modem is connected, it is disconnected).<br>Z9 Performs a full modem reset, as if the power were turned off and on. | Control\Reset |

**Table 13-1**
**(5 of 11)**
**3800*Plus* AT Commands**

| AT Command | Description | Front Panel Branch |
|---|---|---|
| &C*n* | **LSD Control**<br>&C0 Forced On. LSD on at all times.<br>**&C1** Standard RS232. LSD is on when the remote modem's carrier signal is detected. LSD is off when carrier signal is not detected.<br>&C2 Wink When Disconnect. LSD normally forced ON, turns Off for approximately one second upon disconnecting.<br>&C3 Follows DTR. State of LSD follows state of DTR.<br>&C4 Simulated Control Carrier. State of LSD follows state of remote modem's RTS.<br>&C5 =DTR/Disconnect Off. State of LSD follows state of DTR except upon a disconnect where DTR remains ON and LSD turns Off. DTR must then toggle Off and ON to turn LSD ON. Use this setting for AT&T DATAKIT® applications. Note that to use this configuration option, the DTR Action configuration option must be set to Stndrd_RS232 (&D1 or &D2).<br>&C6 Bridge Retrain. LSD behaves as if it were set for Stndrd_RS232, except that it is turned off when a retrain condition lasts longer than 10 seconds, and turned on again when no retrain condition is detected for a period of 10 seconds. | Configure\Edit\<br>DTE Interface |
| &D*n* | **DTR Action**<br>**&D0** Ignore. Modem ignores the true status of DTR and treats it as always ON.<br>&D1 Off=Command Mode. Modem enters online Command Mode if connected when DTR switches Off.<br>&D2 Standard RS232. DTR Signal is controlled by the DTE.<br>&D3 Off=Reload Strap. Follows Standard RS232 operation, except that when DTR switches Off, the modem loads the Active (Saved) area into the Active (Operating) area.<br>&D4 Controls On-Hook. Follows Standard RS232 operation, except that modem does not disconnect until DTR is lowered by the DTE. | Configure\Edit\<br>DTE Interface |

**Table 13-1**
**(6 of 11)**
**3800*Plus* AT Commands**

<table>
<tr><th>AT Command</th><th>Description</th><th>Front Panel Branch</th></tr>
<tr><td>&Fn</td><td>Select Factory Default Configuration Options<br>Loads factory configuration options into Active (Operating) area.<br>&F0 Async Dial<br>&F1 Sync Dial<br>&F2 Sync Leased: Answer<br>&F3 UNIX Dial<br>&F4 Sync Leased: Originate<br>&F5 Cellular (Mobile)<br>&F6 Cellular (PSTN)<br>If your modem is attached to a cellular telephone, use the &F5 command to configure the modem for cellular communications. &F5 (Cellular(Mobile)) sets the following configuration options:<br><table><tr><th>Option</th><th>AT Command Value</th></tr><tr><td>Maximum Frame Size</td><td>\A4</td></tr><tr><td>Error Control Mode</td><td>\N4</td></tr><tr><td>Auto-Answer Rings</td><td>S0=3</td></tr><tr><td>No Answer Timeout</td><td>S7=120</td></tr><tr><td>No Carrier Disconnect</td><td>S10=100</td></tr><tr><td>V.32bis Train</td><td>S43=1</td></tr><tr><td>V.32bis Autorate</td><td>S76=3</td></tr><tr><td>V.42 ARQ Window Size</td><td>S89=9</td></tr><tr><td>Cellular Enhancements</td><td>S91=1</td></tr></table>If your modem is attached to a normal dial telephone line but sometimes communicates with a modem that is attached to a cellular phone, use the &F6 command. &F6 (Cellular(PSTN)) sets the following configuration options:<br><table><tr><th>Option</th><th>AT Command Value</th></tr><tr><td>Transmit Level</td><td>&I99</td></tr><tr><td>Error Control Mode</td><td>\N4</td></tr><tr><td>No Answer Timeout</td><td>S7=120</td></tr><tr><td>No Carrier Disconnect</td><td>S10=100</td></tr><tr><td>V.32bis Train</td><td>S43=1</td></tr><tr><td>V.42 ARQ Window Size</td><td>S89=9</td></tr><tr><td>Cellular Enhancements</td><td>S91=1</td></tr></table>The &F0, &F3, &F5, and &F6 commands leave the modem in AT Command mode. The other commands place the modem into Dumb mode. The only way to return to AT command control is via the front panel.</td><td>Configure\Factory</td></tr>
<tr><td>&Gn</td><td>V.22bis Guard Tone<br>&G0 Disable.<br>&G1 550 Hz.<br>&G2 1800 Hz.</td><td>Configure\Edit\Dial Line</td></tr>
</table>

**Table 13-1**
**(7 of 11)**
**3800*Plus* AT Commands**

| AT Command | Description | Front Panel Branch |
|---|---|---|
| &I | **Dial Transmit Level**<br>When Dial Transmit Level Type is set to Permissive, &I*n* sets Dial Transmit Level to a value between –10 and –32 dBm. &I99 and &I100 cause the level to be varied automatically according to conditions for Enhanced Throughput Cellular (ETC) operation.<br>&I10 –10 dBm<br>&I11 –11 dBm<br>• •<br>• •<br>&I32 –32 dBm<br>&I99 Automatically adjusted according to the ETC1.0 specification. Use only with remote modems set to &I99, and limit the data rate to 4800 bps (S41=5). Set by &F6.<br>&I100 Automatically adjusted according to the ETC1.1 specification.<br>**NOTE:** &J0 overrides this command; &I*n* overrides the &J0 command. | Configure\Edit\Dial Line |
| &J*n* | **Dial Transmit Level Type**<br>**&J0** Permissive (Approx. –9 dBm).<br>**NOTE:** &J0 overrides the &I*n* command; &I*n* overrides the &J0 command. | Configure\Edit\Dial Line |
| &L*n* | **Leased Mode**<br>&L0 Disables leased-line operation.<br>&L1 2-wire originate leased-line operation.<br>&L2 4-wire originate leased-line operation.<br>&L3 2-wire answer leased-line operation.<br>&L4 4-wire answer leased-line operation.<br>The &L command will cause the modem to reset before entering or exiting Leased-Line mode. Therefore, it must be entered as the last command in an initialization string. The modem must be in Sync Leased mode (&F2 or &F4) for the &L command to work. | Configure\Edit\Leased Line |

**Table 13-1**
**(8 of 11)**
**3800*Plus* AT Commands**

| AT Command | Description | Front Panel Branch |
|---|---|---|
| &M*n* and &Q*n* | **Async/Sync Mode and DTE Dialer Type**<br>**&M0, &Q0** Modem operates in Asynchronous mode and uses AT Command protocol.<br>&M1, &Q1 Modem operates in Synchronous mode and uses AT Command protocol.<br>&M2, &Q2 Modem operates in Synchronous mode and dials telephone number stored in directory location 1 when DTR signal turns Off and then ON.<br>&M3, &Q3 Modem operates in Synchronous mode and uses AT Command protocol.<br>&M231, &Q231 Modem operates in Asynchronous mode; the DTE Dialer Type is disabled.<br>&M232, &Q232 Modem operates in Asynchronous mode; V.25bis Async dialing is enabled.<br>&M233, &Q233 Modem operates in Synchronous mode; V.25bis Bisync dialing is enabled.<br>&M234, &Q234 Modem operates in Synchronous mode; V.25bis HDLC dialing is enabled.<br>&M235, &Q235 Modem operates in Asynchronous mode; AT&T Exclusive dialing is enabled.<br>&M236, &Q236 Modem operates in Synchronous mode; the DTE Dialer Type is disabled.<br>The &M2, &Q2, &M231, &Q231, &M236, and &Q236 commands disable the use of AT commands and force the modem into Dumb mode. The only way to gain control of the modem is the front panel. | Configure\Edit\ DTE Dialer |
| &R*n* | **RTS Action**<br>&R0 Standard RS232. RTS must be ON for the DTE to transmit to the modem.<br>**&R1** Ignores RTS. Modem acts as if RTS is always ON.<br>&R2 Simulated Control Carrier. RTS input controls the remote modem's LSD signal.<br>&R3 Control Carrier. The DTE's RTS signal controls the modem's carrier signal. | Configure\Edit\ DTE Interface |
| &S*n* | **DSR Control**<br>**&S0** Forced On. DSR output is constantly ON.<br>&S1 Standard RS232. The modem controls DSR to the DTE, turning ON DSR when handshaking begins, and Off upon disconnect.<br>&S2 Wink When Disconnect. DSR is normally ON, but is forced Off momentarily during a disconnect.<br>&S3 Follows DTR. When the modem receives DTR from the DTE, it sends DSR to the DTE.<br>&S4 On Early. DSR is Off when the modem is in an idle state, and goes ON when a command is received to enter Data mode.<br>&S5 Delay to Data. Like Standard RS232, but DSR is not turned ON until the modem is in Data mode.<br>&S6 Dial Backup Toggle. DSR is turned Off during a dial backup attempt, and ON when the attempt is completed. | Configure\Edit\ DTE Interface |

**Table 13-1**
**(9 of 11)**
**3800*Plus* AT Commands**

| AT Command | Description | Front Panel Branch |
|---|---|---|
| &T*n* | **Tests**<br>&T0 Abort. Stops any test in progress.<br>&T1 Local Analog Loop.<br>&T2 Pattern. Transmits and receives a 511 Bit Error Rate Test (BERT).<br>&T3 Local Digital Loopback test.<br>&T4 Enables Receive Remote Loopback Response configuration option.<br>&T5 Disables Receive Remote Loopback Response configuration option.<br>&T6 Remote Digital Loopback test.<br>&T7 Remote Digital Loopback with Pattern.<br>&T8 Local Loopback with Pattern.<br>&T9 Self-Test. | Test<br>&T4 and &T5: Configure\Edit\Tests |
| &V*n* | **View Configuration Options**<br>Displays each configuration group within the Active (Operating), Active (Saved), Customer 1, and Customer 2 configuration areas as well as the telephone numbers stores in directory locations 1–10.<br>The output of the &V command can be saved to a file and printed (using your communications software), providing both a record of your configuration and a worksheet for configuration enhancements.<br>&V0 Active (Operating) configuration options.<br>&V1 Active (Saved) configuration options.<br>&V2 Customer 1 configuration options.<br>&V3 Customer 2 configuration options.<br>&V4 Directory locations 1–10. | None |
| &W*n* | **Write (Save to Memory)**<br>Saves the current configuration options in Active (Operating) to one of three configuration areas. This is required to make any configuration changes permanent.<br>&W0 Saved to Active(Save).<br>&W1 Saved to Customer 1.<br>&W2 Saved to Customer 2. | Configure\Save |
| &X*n* | **Transmit Clock Source**<br>**&X0** Internal. Modem provides transmit clock source for synchronous data (Pin 15).<br>&X1 External. Modem derives external transmit clock source provided on Pin 24 for synchronous data.<br>&X2 Receive Clock Loop. Modem derives transmit clock source from receive signal for synchronous data (Pin 17). | Configure\Edit\ DTE Interface |
| &Z*n*=*x* | **Store Telephone Numbers**<br>Modem saves the telephone numbers and dial command modifiers (if any) entered for *x* (up to 40 characters in length) in Directory Location *n* (1–10).<br>For example, the command AT&Z1=5551234 stores the telephone number 555-1234 into directory location 1.<br>To clear a telephone number from a memory location, issue the &Z*n*=*x* command without entering a telephone number. | Call Setup\ Change Directory |

**Table 13-1**
**(10 of 11)**
**3800*Plus* AT Commands**

| AT Command | Description | Front Panel Branch |
|---|---|---|
| \A*n* | **Error Control Maximum Frame Size**<br>\A0 64<br>\A1 128<br>\A2 192<br>**\A3** 256<br>\A4 32<br>\A5 16 | Configure\Edit\ V42/MNP/Buffer |
| \C*n* | **Error Control Negotiate Buffer**<br>**\C0** Disable.<br>\C1 Enable.<br>\C2 Disables and switches modem to Buffer mode. | Configure\Edit\ V42/MNP/Buffer |
| \D*n* | **CTS Control**<br>**\D0** Forced On. Forces CTS to always ON.<br>\D1 Standard RS232.<br>\D2 Wink When Disconnect. CTS is turned Off for 1 to 2 seconds upon a disconnect.<br>\D3 Follows DTR. The state of CTS follows the state of DTR. | Configure\Edit\ DTE Interface |
| \G*n* | **Modem to Modem Flow Control**<br>**\G0** Disable.<br>\G1 Enable. | Configure\Edit\ V42/MNP/Buffer |
| \K*n* | **Break Buffer Control, Send Break Control, Break Forces Escape**<br>\K0 Discard Data / Break First / Enable<br>\K1 Discard Data / Break First / Disable<br>\K2 Keep Data / Break First / Enable<br>\K3 Keep Data / Break First / Disable<br>\K4 Keep Data / Data First / Enable<br>**\K5** Keep Data / Data First / Disable<br>\K6 Discard Break / Not Applic. / Disable | Break Buffer Control: Configure\Edit\ V42/MNP/Buffer<br>Send Break Control: Configure\Edit\ V42/MNP/Buffer<br>Break Forces Escape: Configure\Edit\ DTE Dialer |
| \N*n* | **Error Control Mode**<br>\N0 Buffer Mode.<br>\N1 Direct Mode.<br>\N2 MNP or Disconnect.<br>\N3 MNP or Buffer.<br>\N4 V.42/MNP or Disconnect.<br>**\N5** V.42/MNP or Buffer.<br>\N6 LAPM or Disconnect.<br>\N7 LAPM or Buffer. | Configure\Edit\ V42/MNP/Buffer |

**Table 13-1**
**(11 of 11)**
**3800*Plus* AT Commands**

| AT Command | Description | Front Panel Branch |
|---|---|---|
| \Q*n* | **Flow Control of DTE, Flow Control of Modem**<br><br>\Q0 Disable / Disable<br>\Q1 XON/XOFF / XON/XOFF<br>**\Q2** CTS to DTE / Disable<br>\Q3 CTS to DTE / RTS to Mdm<br>\Q4 XON/XOFF / Disable<br>\Q5 Disable / XON/XOFF<br>\Q6 Disable / RTS to Mdm | Configure\Edit\ V42/MNP/Buffer |
| \T*n* | **No Data Disconnect Timer**<br>**\T0** Disable.<br>\T*n* Where n is a value from 1 to 255 in 1-minute increments. | Configure\Edit\ Line Dialer |
| \X*n* | **XON/XOFF Passthrough Flow Control**<br>**\X0** Disable.<br>\X1 Enable. | Configure\Edit\ V42/MNP/Buffer |
| %A*n* | **Error Control Fallback Character**<br>%A*n* Where *n* is an ASCII value from 0 to 127. Factory default is 013 ASCII. | Configure\Edit\ V42/MNP/Buffer |
| %C*n* | **MNP5 Data Compression**<br>%C0 Disable.<br>**%C1** Enable. | Configure\Edit\ V42/MNP/Buffer |
| ″H*n* | V.42bis Compression<br>″H0 Disable.<br>″H1 Transmit only. (Not available from DCP.)<br>″H2 Receive only. (Not available from DCP.)<br>″**H3** Transmit and Receive. (Equivalent to Enabled option on DCP.) | Configure\Edit\ V42/MNP/Buffer |
| +FCLASS=*n* | **Service Class Selection**<br>Normally set by fax software, Service Class Selection determines the fax protocol. The command is sent to the modem in the format +FCLASS=*n*, where *n* can be set to one of three values:<br>**0**=Data<br>1=Class 1 Fax (EIA 578)<br>2=Class 2 Fax (EIA/TIA SP-2388 dated 20 August 1990)<br>In the format +FCLASS?, the +FCLASS command returns the current Service Class: 0, 1, or 2. In the format +FCLASS=?, the +FCLASS command returns the Service Classes available: 0, 1, 2.<br>**NOTE:** Other fax commands supported by the 3800*Plus* modems are not documented in this manual because they are not normally issued by the user. They follow the EIA 578 and EIA/TIA SP-2388 specifications. | |

# S-Register List

S-registers affect the operating parameters of 3800*Plus* modems. S-registers are only applicable when the DTE Dialer Type configuration option is set for AT. (See &M*n* command.)

Table 13-2 lists all S-registers supported by 3800*Plus* modems. The first column lists the S-register. The second column lists all possible values for that register. The third column lists the key sequence used to enter the equivalent from the front panel. Use the reference in this column to locate commands in Chapter 8 if further description is necessary.

## S-Register Format

S-registers can be displayed and/or modified when the modem is in Command mode. To display the value of an S-register, issue the following command:

***TYPE:*** ATS*n*?

***Where:*** *n* is the register number

***PRESS:*** Enter

To modify the value of an S-register, issue the following command:

***TYPE:*** ATS*n*=*r*

***Where:*** *n* is the register number, and
*r* is the new value

***PRESS:*** Enter

In Table 13-2, the value for *n* is listed in the S-register column, and the value for *r* is listed in the Description column.

**Table 13-2**
**(1 of 13)**
**3800*Plus* S-Registers**

| AT Command | Description | Front Panel Branch |
|---|---|---|
| S0 | **Auto-Answer Ring Number**<br>Register determines number of rings the modem will count before automatically answering a call.<br>Enter zero (0) if you do not want the modem to automatically answer any calls. Otherwise, enter a value from 1–255 for the number of rings to count before answering.<br>Factory setting is 1. | Configure\Edit\<br>Line Dialer |
| S2 | **AT Escape Character**<br>Register determines ASCII value used for escape sequence to enter Command mode from Data mode.<br>Enter a value from 0 to 127 for the escape character. Any value greater than 127 causes the modem to disable the escape sequence. When the escape sequence is disabled, the modem cannot return to Command mode until the call is disconnected.<br>Factory setting is 43 (+ key). | Configure\Edit\<br>DTE Dialer |
| S3 | **Carriage Return Character**<br>Register determines ASCII value used as the carriage return (Return key). This character is used to end command lines and result codes.<br>Enter a value from 0 to 127 for the command end character.<br>Factory setting is 13 (carriage return key).<br>**NOTE:** The &W command used to save this change must be on a separate line. This ensures both that the change is intentional, and that the DTE can enter the new character. | Configure\Edit\<br>DTE Dialer |

**Table 13-2**
**(2 of 13)**
**3800*Plus* S-Registers**

| AT Command | Description | Front Panel Branch |
|---|---|---|
| S4 | **Line Feed Character**<br>Register determines ASCII value used as the line feed character.<br>Enter a value from 0–127 for the line feed character.<br>Factory setting is 10 (ASCII carriage return or line feed). | Configure\Edit\<br>DTE Dialer |
| S5 | **Backspace Character**<br>Register determines ASCII value used as the backspace (Backspace key). This character moves the cursor to the left and erases the previous character.<br>Enter a value from 0–127.<br>Factory setting is 08 (backspace key). | Configure\Edit\<br>DTE Dialer |
| S6 | **Blind Dial Pause**<br>Register determines how long (in seconds) the modem waits after going off-hook before dialing a telephone number if using result code X0, X1, or X3.<br>Enter a value from 2–255 seconds.<br>Factory setting is 2 seconds. | Configure\Edit\<br>Line Dialer |
| S7 | **No Answer Timeout**<br>Register determines how long (in seconds) an originating modem waits before abandoning a call when no answer tone is received.<br>Enter a value from 1–255 seconds.<br>Factory setting is 45 seconds. | Configure\Edit\<br>Line Dialer |
| S8 | **“,” Pause Time for the Dial Modifier**<br>Register determines how long (in seconds) the modem pauses when it encounters a comma (,) in the Dial command string.<br>Enter a value from 0–255 seconds.<br>Factory setting is 2 seconds. | Configure\Edit\<br>Line Dialer |
| S10 | **No Carrier Disconnect**<br>Register determines how long (in tenths of seconds) the modem allows the carrier signal to be off before disconnecting the call.<br>Enter a value from 0–254 in 0.1 second increments. (A value of 255 disables this register.)<br>Factory setting is 20 (2 seconds). | Configure\Edit\<br>Line Dialer |
| S12 | **Escape Guard Time**<br>Register sets the value (in 20-millisecond increments) for the required pause before and after the escape sequence is issued. The guard time prevents the modem from interpreting data as the escape sequence characters.<br>Enter a value from 0–255 in 20-millisecond increments. For example, the factory setting of 50 equals 1000 milliseconds or one second.<br>Factory setting is 50 (1 second). | Configure\Edit\<br>DTE Dialer |

**Table 13-2**
**(3 of 13)**
**3800*Plus* S-Registers**

| AT Command | Description | Front Panel Branch |
|---|---|---|
| S14 | **Asymmetric Rate Mode**<br>Register determines whether VF rates for transmitting and receiving are identical when using V.34 modulation. Enabling the function permits the two rates to be different.<br>Register has the following values:<br>0=Enable<br>1=Disable<br>Factory setting is Enable. | Configure\Edit\<br>Dial Line |
| S18 | **Test Timeout**<br>Register sets the duration (in seconds) for the modem tests. This automatically cancels any test in progress after the time of this register expires. Any test can be manually canceled by issuing the escape sequence (+++) followed by the &T0 command.<br>Enter a value from 0–255 seconds. (A value of 0 disables this register.)<br>Factory setting is Disable (0). | Configure\Edit\<br>Tests |
| S26 | **RTS-to-CTS Delay**<br>Register sets the length of time (in 10-millisecond increments) the modem waits after receiving RTS before issuing CTS to the DTE.<br>Enter a value from 0–255.<br>Factory setting is 0 milliseconds. | Configure\Edit\<br>DTE Interface |
| S36 | **Rate Auto Originate**<br>Initiates a dial backup call, using the phone number or numbers determined by S-register S37 when the leased-line rate of the modem falls back to or below a certain speed.<br>Register has the following values:<br>0=Disable<br>1=On fallback to 4,800<br>2=On fallback to 7,200<br>3=On fallback to 9,600<br>4=On fallback to 12,000<br>5=On fallback to 14,400<br>6=On fallback to 16,800<br>**NOTE:** Rate Auto-Originate is valid only when V.32bis Autorate is enabled (S76=0) and when running V.32bis modulation. | Configure\Edit\<br>Leased Line |

**Table 13-2**
**(4 of 13)**
**3800*Plus* S-Registers**

| AT Command | Description | Front Panel Branch |
|---|---|---|
| S37 | **Auto Redial**<br>Auto Redial allows repeated automatic dial backup attempts by specifying the range of Directory Locations that can be tried. A redial attempt is made in response to a bad phone number, a busy signal, no answer, or no quiet answer. The modem must be in Originate mode.<br>On leased lines with dial backup, Auto Redial works in conjunction with the Bad Lines Auto Originate and Rate Auto Originate options.<br>When DTE Dialer Type is DTR=Dirs, Auto Redial works in conjunction with the DTR Cont Repeat (S38) configuration option.<br>Register has the following values:<br>0= Directory Location 1<br>1= Directory Locations 1–2<br>2= Directory Locations 1–3<br>3= Directory Locations 1–4<br>• •<br>• •<br>9= Directory Locations 1–10<br>**NOTE:** The modem must be in Originate mode to perform an automatic dial backup. | Configure\Edit\<br>Leased Line (Auto Redial)<br>*or*<br>Configure\Edit\<br>Line_Dialer (DTR Auto Redial) |
| S38 | **DTR Cont Repeat**<br>Determines whether automatic dialing of dial backup directory locations will be repeated continuously, or halted after the first pass.<br>Regardless of the setting of S38, dialing is locked out after ten failed attempts to connect to the same number.<br>Register has the following values:<br>0=Disable<br>1=Enable<br>Factory setting is Disable. | Configure\Edit\<br>DTE_Dialer |
| S39 | **Receive Buffer Disconnect Delay**<br>Determines the maximum amount of time the modem can continue to send data in its Receive Buffer to the DTE after the modem is commanded by the DTE to disconnect, or after the modem detects a line disconnect.<br>Register has the following values:<br>0=Disable (Immediate disconnect)<br>1=1 second<br>2=2 seconds<br>• •<br>• •<br>255=255 seconds<br>Factory setting is Disable (0). | Configure\Edit\<br>V42/MNP/Buffer |
| S40 | **Auto Make Busy**<br>Register determines if the modem goes off-hook under certain conditions. This register should only be enabled when the modem is located behind a user's Private Branch Exchange (PBX).<br>Register has the following values:<br>0=Disable<br>1=Enable<br>Factory setting is Disable. | Configure\Edit\<br>Line Dialer |

**Table 13-2**
**(5 of 13)**
**3800*Plus* S-Registers**

| AT Command | Description | Front Panel Branch |
|---|---|---|
| S41 | **Dial-Line Rate**<br>Register determines the modem's data rate and modulation scheme for operation on dial lines.<br>Register has the following values:<br>1=14,400 (V.32bis)<br>2=12,000 (V.32bis)<br>3=9600 (V.32bis/V32)<br>4=7200 (V.32bis)<br>5=4800 (V.32bis/V.32)<br>6=2400 (V.22bis)<br>7=1200 (V.22)<br>8=1200 (212A)<br>10=0–300 (V21)<br>11=0–300 (103J)<br>20=19,200 (V.32*terbo*)<br>21=16,800 (V.32*terbo*)<br>27=33,600 (V.34 proprietary extension)<br>28=31,200 (V.34 proprietary extension)<br>29=28,800 (V.34)<br>30=26,400 ( V.34)<br>31=24,000 ( V.34)<br>32=21,600 (V.34)<br>33=19,200 (V.34)<br>34=16,800 (V.34)<br>35=14,400 (V.34)<br>36=12,000 (V.34)<br>37=9600 (V.34)<br>38=7200 (V.34)<br>39=4800 (V.34)<br>40=2400 (V.34)<br>Factory setting is 28,800 (V.34). | Configure\Edit\<br>Dial Line |
| S43 | **Train Time**<br>Register controls the modem's train time for V.34, V.32*terbo*, V.32bis, and V.32 mode.<br>Register has the following values:<br>0=Long<br>1=Short<br>Factory setting is Long. | Configure\Edit\<br>Dial Line |

**Table 13-2**
**(6 of 13)**
**3800*Plus* S-Registers**

| AT Command | Description | Front Panel Branch |
|---|---|---|
| S44 | **Leased-Line Rate**<br>Register determines the modem's data rate and modulation scheme for operation on either 2-wire or 4-wire leased lines in either Answer or Originate mode.<br>Register has the following values:<br>0, 1=14,400 (V.32bis)<br>2=12,000 (V.32bis)<br>3=9600 (V.32bis)<br>4=7200 (V.32bis)<br>5=4800 (V.32bis)<br>6=2400 (V.22bis)<br>11=14,400 (V.33)<br>12=12,000 (V.33)<br>13 =9600 (V.29)<br>14=7200 (V.29)<br>15=4800 (V.29)<br>18=19,200 (V.32*terbo*)<br>19=16,800 (V.32*terbo*)<br>25=33,600 (V.34 proprietary extension)<br>26=31,200 (V.34 proprietary extension)<br>27=28,800 (V.34)<br>28=26,400 (V.34)<br>29=24,000 (V.34)<br>30=21,600 (V.34)<br>31=19,200 (V.34)<br>32=16,800 (V.34)<br>33=14,400 (V.34)<br>34=12,000 (V.34)<br>35=9600 (V.34)<br>36=7200 ( V.34)<br>37=4800 (V.34)<br>38=2400 (V.34)<br>Factory setting is 28,800 (V.34). | Configure\Edit\<br>Leased Line |
| S45 | **Leased TX Level**<br>Register determines the modem's transmit power output level over leased lines.<br>Enter a value from 0–15 dBm.<br>Factory setting is 0 dBm. | Configure\Edit\<br>Leased Line |
| S46 | **Bad Lines Auto Originate**<br>Register determines if the modem performs an automatic dial backup if the leased lines fail.<br>Register has the following values:<br>0=Disable<br>1=30 seconds<br>2=20 seconds<br>3=60 seconds<br>4=90 seconds<br>5=120 seconds<br>• •<br>• •<br>21=600 seconds<br>Factory setting is Disable. Note that the S46=2 command has an effect that is out of sequence with the other values. | Configure\Edit\<br>Leased Line |

**Table 13-2**
**(7 of 13)**
**3800*Plus* S-Registers**

| AT Command | Description | Front Panel Branch |
|---|---|---|
| S47 | **Auto Dial Standby**<br>Register determines if the modem performs an automatic dial standby if in Dial Backup mode.<br>Register has the following values:<br>0=Disable<br>1=15 minutes<br>2=1 hour<br>3=4 hours<br>255=Test(2min)<br>Factory setting is Disable. | Configure\Edit\<br>Leased Line |
| S48 | **Leased-Line Carrier On Level**<br>Register determines if the modem disconnects if the carrier signal on leased lines falls below –26 dBm or –43 dBm.<br>Register has the following values:<br>0= –43 dBm<br>1= –26 dBm<br>Factory setting is –43 dBm. | Configure\Edit\<br>Leased Line |
| S49 | **Transmit Buffer Disconnect Delay**<br>Determines the maximum amount of time the modem can continue to send data in its Transmit Buffer to the remote modem after it is commanded by the DTE to disconnect.<br>Register has the following values:<br>0=Disable (Immediate disconnect)<br>1=1 second<br>2=2 seconds<br>• •<br>• •<br>255=255 seconds<br>Factory setting is 10 seconds. | Configure\Edit\<br>V42/MNP/Buffer |
| S51 | **DTE RL (CT140)**<br>Register determines if the modem performs a remote digital loopback if it receives a CT140 signal from the DTE.<br>Register has the following values:<br>0=Disable<br>1=Enable<br>Factory setting is Disable. | Configure\Edit\Tests |
| S52 | **DTE LL (CT141)**<br>Register determines if the modem performs a local analog loopback if it receives a CT141 signal from the DTE.<br>Register has the following values:<br>0=Disable<br>1=Enable<br>Factory setting is Disable. | Configure\Edit\Tests |

**Table 13-2**
**(8 of 13)**
**3800*Plus* S-Registers**

| AT Command | Description | Front Panel Branch |
|---|---|---|
| S53 | **V.54 Address**<br>Identifies the address of the modem to be placed in a loopback test.<br>Register has the following values:<br>0 =Disable<br>1–34 =Modem address<br>Factory setting is Disable. | Configure\Edit\Tests |
| S54 | **V.54 Device Type**<br>Identifies where the modem is physically located in the network.<br>Register has the following values:<br>0=Peripheral<br>1=Intermediate<br>Factory setting is Peripheral. | Configure\Edit\Tests |
| S55 | **Access from Remote**<br>Register determines if a modem's DCP can be accessed by a remote modem.<br>Register has the following values:<br>0=Enable<br>1=Disable<br>The factory default templates do not affect S55. | Configure\Edit\Misc |
| S56 | **Remote Access Password** (Part 1)<br>Register allows entry of the first pair (leftmost) of digits of a remote access password. Any value from 00 to 99 is valid. For example, if the remote access password is 12345678, then S56=12. | Configure\Edit\Misc |
| S57 | **Remote Access Password** (Part 2)<br>Register allows entry of the second pair of digits of a remote access password. Any value from 00 to 99 is valid. | Configure\Edit\Misc |
| S58 | **Remote Access Password** (Part 3)<br>Register allows entry of the third pair of digits of a remote access password. Any value from 00 to 99 is valid. | Configure\Edit\Misc |
| S59 | **Remote Access Password** (Part 4)<br>Register allows entry of the fourth pair (rightmost) of digits of a remote access password. Any value from 00 to 99 is valid. | Configure\Edit\Misc |
| S61 | **CT111 Rate Control**<br>Register determines if CT111 Rate is disabled, set for Fallback 1 or Fallback 2. CT111 Rate allows the DTE to control modem rate via Pin 23 of the EIA-232-D interface. This configuration option determines the effect of the DTE Rate Control signal. It is only valid in Async Direct mode and Synchronous mode. For proper operation, disable the V32bis Autorate and V32bis Automode configuration options.<br>Register has the following values:<br>0=Disable<br>1=Fallback 1<br>2=Fallback 2<br>Factory setting is Disable. | Configure\Edit\<br>DTE Interface |

**Table 13-2**
**(9 of 13)**
**3800*Plus* S-Registers**

| AT Command | Description | Front Panel Branch |
|---|---|---|
| S62 | **V.25bis Coding**<br>Register identifies to the modem the type of coding used by the DTE while in V.25bis mode.<br>Register has the following values:<br>0=ASCII<br>1=EBCDIC<br>Factory setting is ASCII. | Configure\Edit\<br>DTE Dialer |
| S63 | **V.25bis Idle Character**<br>Register identifies to the modem the type of idle fill used by the DTE while in V.25bis mode.<br>Register has the following values:<br>0=Mark<br>1=Flag<br>Factory setting is Mark. | Configure\Edit\<br>DTE Dialer |
| S64 | **V.25bis New Line Character**<br>Register identifies to the modem the type of line terminator used by the DTE while in V.25bis mode.<br>Register has the following values:<br>0=Carriage Return and Line Feed<br>1=Carriage Return<br>2=Line Feed<br>Factory setting is carriage return and line feed (CR + LF). | Configure\Edit\<br>DTE Dialer |
| S66 | **NMS Call Messages**<br>Register determines if the modem sends information regarding status (Call Progress) and/or sends summarized call statistics (Call Connect) to the dial network management system (COMSPHERE 6700 Series NMS).<br>Register has the following values:<br>0=Call Connect & Progress<br>1=Disable<br>2=Call Connect Only<br>3=Call Progress Only<br>The factory default templates do not affect S66. | Configure\Edit\Misc |
| S67 | **Directory Location 1 Callback**<br>Register determines if the modem uses the single number callback function.<br>Register has the following values:<br>0=Disable<br>1=Enable<br>Factory setting is Disable. | Configure\Edit\Misc |
| S69 | **Make Busy Via DTR**<br>Register determines if the modem goes off-hook (busy) when DTR is Off.<br>Register has the following values:<br>0=Disable<br>1=Enable<br>Factory setting is Disable. | Configure\Edit\<br>Line Dialer |

**Table 13-2**
**(10 of 13)**
**3800*Plus* S-Registers**

| AT Command | Description | Front Panel Branch |
|---|---|---|
| S74 | **Network Position Identification**<br>Register identifies each modem as either a control or tributary modem.<br>Register has the following values:<br>0=Tributary<br>1=Control<br>Factory setting is Tributary for the 3810*Plus* and the 3820*Plus*.<br>Factory setting is Control for the 3811*Plus*. | Configure\Edit\Misc |
| S75 | **Network Management Address**<br>Register determines the modem's network address. This address is used when accessing the modem from the NMS.<br>Enter a value from 0 (network address 001) to 255 (network address 256).<br>The factory default templates do not affect S75. | Configure\Edit\Dial |
| S76 | **Autorate (Dial Line)**<br>Register determines if Autorating is used on dial lines when connected in V.32bis or V.34 mode.<br>Register has the following values:<br>0=Enable<br>1=Disable<br>2=Start at 4800 bps<br>3=Start at 9600 bps<br>Factory setting is Enable. | Configure\Edit\<br>Dial Line |
| S77 | **DTR Alarm Reporting**<br>Register determines whether an alarm is sent to the NMS controller when the DTR signal has been off for more than 10 seconds.<br>Register has the following values:<br>0=Disable<br>1=Enable<br>The factory default templates do not affect S77. | Configure\Edit\Misc |
| S78 | **Automode (Dial Line)**<br>Register allows the modem (when operating on dial lines) to automatically detect and connect to the remote modem's modulation scheme.<br>If the modem is in a modem pool attached to a System 85 Private Branch Exchange (PBX), S78 should be set to 2. This modifies parameters used during connection to the PBX.<br>Register has the following values:<br>0=Enable<br>1=Disable<br>2=System 85<br>Factory setting is Enable. | Configure\Edit\<br>Dial Line |

**Table 13-2**
**(11 of 13)**
**3800*Plus* S-Registers**

| AT Command | Description | Front Panel Branch |
|---|---|---|
| S80 | **No Data Disconnect Trigger Signal**<br>Register determines whether Pin 2 (transmit data) or Pin 3 (receive data) of the modem's RS-232 serial interface is monitored so that the modem can disconnect the call if there is no activity for a certain period. (See the \T command.)<br>Register has the following values:<br>0=Transmit or Receive<br>1=Transmit only<br>2=Receive only<br>3=Transmit and Receive<br>Factory setting is 3. | Configure\Edit\<br>Line Dialer |
| S82 | **Autorate (Leased Line)**<br>Register determines if Autorating is used on leased lines when connected in V.32bis or V.34 mode.<br>Register has the following values:<br>0=Enable<br>1=Disable<br>Factory setting is Enable. | Configure\Edit<br>Leased Line |
| S83 | **MI/MIC Dialing**<br>On Model 3811*Plus* only, register determines if MI/MIC control leads can be used to force the modem into the originate handshake after first dialing a call.<br>Register has the following values:<br>0=Disable<br>1=Enable<br>Factory setting is Disable. | Configure\Edit\<br>Line Dialer |
| S84 | **AT Command Mode**<br>Register determines how the modem responds to valid and invalid AT commands.<br>Register has the following values:<br>0=Normal<br>1=No ERROR<br>2=No Strap or ERROR<br>Factory setting is Normal. | Configure\Edit\<br>DTE Dialer |
| S85 | **Fast Disconnect**<br>Register allows the modem to disconnect immediately after receiving a disconnect command from a local DTE or its own diagnostic control panel.<br>Register has the following values:<br>0=Disable<br>1=Enable<br>Factory setting is Disable. | Configure\Edit\<br>Line Dialer |

**Table 13-2**
**(12 of 13)**
**3800*Plus* S-Registers**

| AT Command | Description | Front Panel Branch |
|---|---|---|
| S88 | **Straps When Disconnected**<br>Register determines whether the Active(Operating) area is reloaded upon a disconnect.<br>Register has the following values:<br>0 (or 231)=No Change<br>1 (or 232)=Reload<br>2 (or 233)=Reload with no AT Change<br>The factory default templates do not affect S88. | Configure\Edit\Misc |
| S89 | **V.42 ARQ Window Size Increase**<br>Register allows the V.42 Automatic Request for Transmission (ARQ) window size to be set to a value from 6 to 15 frames to accommodate satellite delays.<br>Register has the following values:<br>0=6 frames (default)<br>1=7 frames<br>2=8 frames<br>3=9 frames<br>• •<br>• •<br>9=15 frames<br>This command applies only to connections made using V.42bis data compression or V.42 error control.<br>Factory setting is 6 frames. | None |
| S90 | **DTE Rate=VF Rate**<br>Register forces the DTE (computer) data rate to be equal to the VF (telephone line) data rate.<br>Register has the following values:<br>0=Disable<br>1=Enable<br>Factory setting is Disable. | Configure\Edit\<br>DTE Interface |
| S91 | **Cellular Enhancements**<br>Register determines whether parameters are set to improve performance over a cellular link. Should be enabled when the remote modem is using a cellular connection.<br>Register has the following values:<br>0=Disable<br>1=Enable<br>Factory setting is Disable. | Configure\Edit\<br>V42/MNP/Buffer |

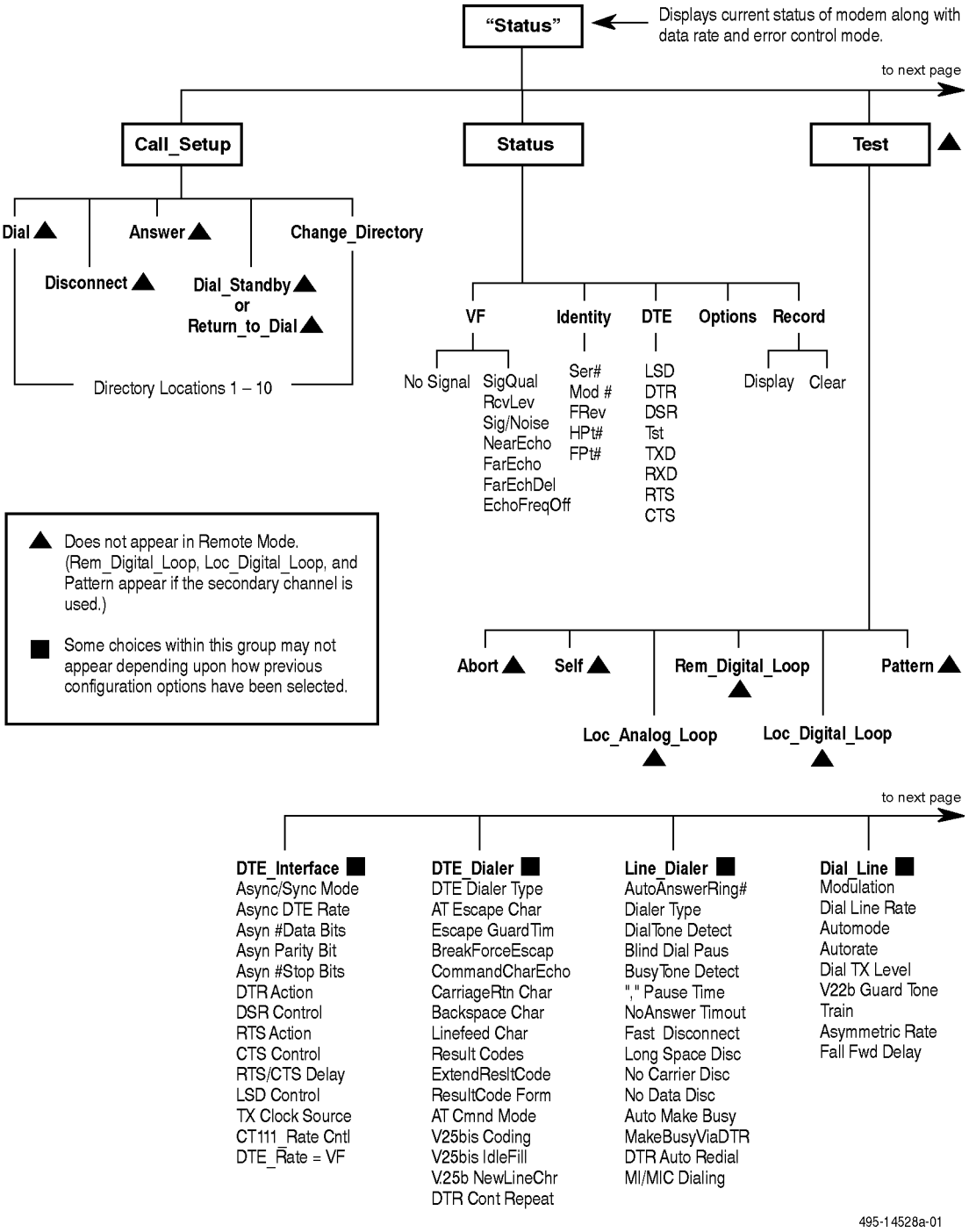
**Table 13-2**
**(13 of 13)**
**3800*Plus* S-Registers**

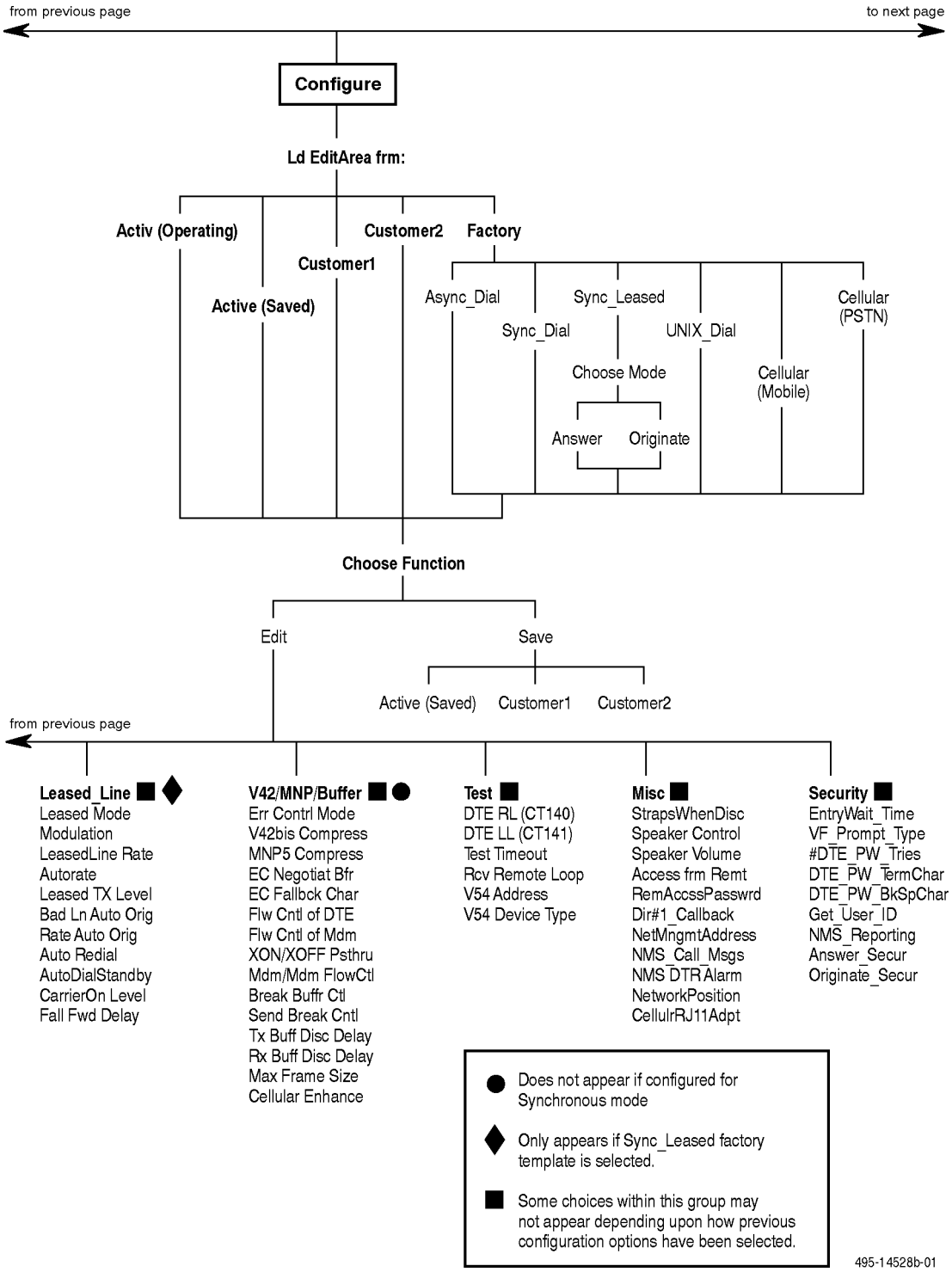
| AT Command | Description | Front Panel Branch |
|---|---|---|
| S92 | **V.29 Train On Data**<br>Register determines whether the modem must receive a standard V.29 training sequence in order to enter data mode (Disable) or whether it should use the received data mode for training (Enable). Effective only if the V.29 feature is installed and V.29 is selected for the leased-line rate.<br>Register has the following values:<br>0=Disable<br>1=Enable<br>Factory setting is Disable. | Configure\Edit<br>Leased Line |
| S93 | **RJ11 Cellular Adapt**<br>Register controls support for an RJ11 connection, including generation of the ETC 1.1 Calling Tone during call origination.<br>Register has the following values:<br>0=Disable<br>1=Enable<br>Factory setting is Disable. | Configure\Edit\Misc |

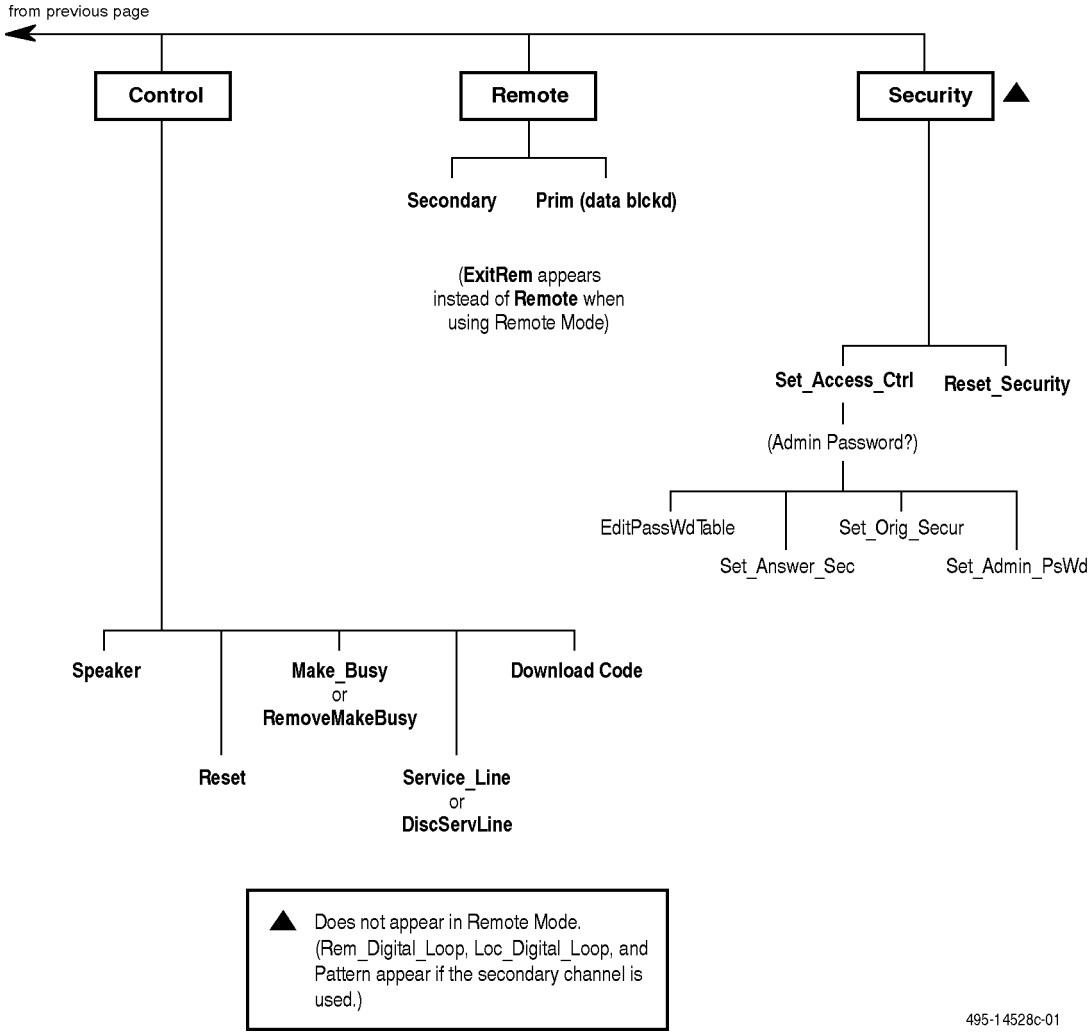
# Menu Tree A

## Overview

The following pages hold graphic representations of the general menu structure of the front panel or SDCP displays. The model, installed features, and configuration options all may affect what is actually displayed at each level of the menus.


"Status"
Displays current status of modem along with data rate and error control mode.
to next page
Call_Setup
Status
Test
Dial ▲
Answer ▲
Change_Directory
Disconnect ▲
Dial_Standby ▲ or Return_to_Dial ▲
Directory Locations 1 – 10
VF
Identity
DTE
Options
Record
No Signal
SigQual
RcvLev
Sig/Noise
NearEcho
FarEcho
FarEchDel
EchoFreqOff
Ser#
Mod #
FRev
HPt#
FPt#
LSD
DTR
DSR
Tst
TXD
RXD
RTS
CTS
Display
Clear
▲ Does not appear in Remote Mode. (Rem_Digital_Loop, Loc_Digital_Loop, and Pattern appear if the secondary channel is used.)
■ Some choices within this group may not appear depending upon how previous configuration options have been selected.
Abort ▲
Self ▲
Rem_Digital_Loop ▲
Pattern ▲
Loc_Analog_Loop ▲
Loc_Digital_Loop ▲
to next page
DTE_Interface ■
Async/Sync Mode
Async DTE Rate
Asyn #Data Bits
Asyn Parity Bit
Asyn #Stop Bits
DTR Action
DSR Control
RTS Action
CTS Control
RTS/CTS Delay
LSD Control
TX Clock Source
CT111_Rate Cntl
DTE_Rate = VF
DTE_Dialer ■
DTE Dialer Type
AT Escape Char
Escape GuardTim
BreakForceEscap
CommandCharEcho
CarriageRtn Char
Backspace Char
Linefeed Char
Result Codes
ExtendResltCode
ResultCode Form
AT Cmnd Mode
V25bis Coding
V25bis IdleFill
V.25b NewLineChr
DTR Cont Repeat
Line_Dialer ■
AutoAnswerRing#
Dialer Type
DialTone Detect
Blind Dial Paus
BusyTone Detect
"," Pause Time
NoAnswer Timout
Fast Disconnect
Long Space Disc
No Carrier Disc
No Data Disc
Auto Make Busy
MakeBusyViaDTR
DTR Auto Redial
MI/MIC Dialing
Dial_Line ■
Modulation
Dial Line Rate
Automode
Autorate
Dial TX Level
V22b Guard Tone
Train
Asymmetric Rate
Fall Fwd Delay
495-14528a-01


from previous page
to next page
Configure
Ld EditArea frm:
Activ (Operating)
Active (Saved)
Customer1
Customer2
Factory
Async_Dial
Sync_Dial
Sync_Leased
UNIX_Dial
Choose Mode
Answer
Originate
Cellular (PSTN)
Cellular (Mobile)
Choose Function
Edit
Save
Active (Saved)
Customer1
Customer2
from previous page
Leased_Line
Leased Mode
Modulation
LeasedLine Rate
Autorate
Leased TX Level
Bad Ln Auto Orig
Rate Auto Orig
Auto Redial
AutoDialStandby
CarrierOn Level
Fall Fwd Delay
V42/MNP/Buffer
Err Contrl Mode
V42bis Compress
MNP5 Compress
EC Negotiat Bfr
EC Fallbck Char
Flw Cntl of DTE
Flw Cntl of Mdm
XON/XOFF Psthru
Mdm/Mdm FlowCtl
Break Buffr Ctl
Send Break Cntl
Tx Buff Disc Delay
Rx Buff Disc Delay
Max Frame Size
Cellular Enhance
Test
DTE RL (CT140)
DTE LL (CT141)
Test Timeout
Rcv Remote Loop
V54 Address
V54 Device Type
Misc
StrapsWhenDisc
Speaker Control
Speaker Volume
Access frm Remt
RemAccssPasswrd
Dir#1_Callback
NetMngmtAddress
NMS_Call_Msgs
NMS DTR Alarm
NetworkPosition
CellulrRJ11Adpt
Security
EntryWait_Time
VF_Prompt_Type
#DTE_PW_Tries
DTE_PW_TermChar
DTE_PW_BkSpChar
Get_User_ID
NMS_Reporting
Answer_Secur
Originate_Secur
Does not appear if configured for Synchronous mode
Only appears if Sync_Leased factory template is selected.
Some choices within this group may not appear depending upon how previous configuration options have been selected.
495-14528b-01


from previous page
Control
Remote
Security
Secondary
Prim (data blckd)
(ExitRem appears instead of Remote when using Remote Mode)
Set_Access_Ctrl
Reset_Security
(Admin Password?)
EditPassWdTable
Set_Orig_Secur
Set_Answer_Sec
Set_Admin_PsWd
Speaker
Make_Busy or RemoveMakeBusy
Download Code
Reset
Service_Line or DiscServLine
▲ Does not appear in Remote Mode. (Rem_Digital_Loop, Loc_Digital_Loop, and Pattern appear if the secondary channel is used.)
495-14528c-01

# Result Codes B

## Overview

Table B-1 lists all the result codes 3800*Plus* modems may send to the DTE. Result codes can be numeric or verbal, terse or extended. See the Q*n*, V*n*, and X*n* commands in Chapter 13 for more information.

**Table B-1**
**(1 of 3)**
**Result Codes**

| Numbers (1) | Numbers (2) | Word | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | 0 | OK | Command executed |
| 1 | 1 | CONNECT | Modem connected to line |
| 2 | 2 | RING | Modem receiving a ring voltage from the VF line |
| 3 | 3 | NO CARRIER | Modem lost or does not detect carrier signal, or does not detect answer tone |
| 4 | 4 | ERROR | Invalid command |
| 5 | 5 | CONNECT 1200* | Connection at 1200 bps |
| 6 | 6 | NO DIALTONE* | No dial tone detected |
| 7 | 7 | BUSY* | Busy or trunk busy signal detected |
| 8 | 8 | NO ANSWER* | No “quiet” answer (@) |
| 10 | 10 | CONNECT 2400* | Connection at 2400 bps |
| 11 | 11 | CONNECT 4800* | Connection at 4800 bps |
| 12 | 12 | CONNECT 9600* | Connection at 9600 bps |
| 13 | 16 | CONNECT 12000* | Connection at 12,000 bps |
| 14 | 13 | CONNECT 14400* | Connection at 14,400 bps |
| 15 | 14 | CONNECT 19200** | Connection at 19,200 bps |
| 16 | 15 | CONNECT 7200* | Connection at 7200 bps |

*Appears when the Extended Result Codes configuration option is enabled.

**Appears when the Extended Result Codes configuration option is set for Use_DTE_Rate. This displays the DTE data rate instead of the line rate.

**Table B-1**
**(2 of 3)**
**Result Codes**

| Numbers (1) | Numbers (2) | Word | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| 17 | 17 | CONNECT 16800* | Connection at 16,800 bps |
| 19 | 1 | CONNECT 300* | Connection at 300 bps |
| 20 | 10 | CONNECT 2400/ EC*** | Connection at 2400 bps with error control |
| 21 | 11 | CONNECT 4800/ EC*** | Connection at 4800 bps with error control |
| 22 | 12 | CONNECT 9600/ EC*** | Connection at 9600 bps with error control |
| 23 | 16 | CONNECT 12000/ EC*** | Connection at 12,000 bps with error control |
| 24 | 13 | CONNECT 14400/ EC*** | Connection at 14,400 bps with error control |
| 25 | 17 | CONNECT 16800/ EC*** | Connection at 16,800 bps with error control |
| 26 | 15 | CONNECT 7200/ EC*** | Connection at 7200 bps with error control |
| 27 | 5 | CONNECT 1200/ EC** | Connection at 1200 bps with error control |
| 28 | 28 | CONNECT 38400** | Connection at 38,400 bps |
| 29 | 14 | CONNECT 19200/ EC*** | Connection at 19,200 bps with error control |
| 30 | 30 | CONNECT 57600** | Connection at 57,600 bps |
| 32 | 32 | CONNECT 76800** | Connection at 76,800 bps |
| 34 | 34 | CONNECT 115200** | Connection at 115,200 bps |
| 37 | 37 | CONNECT 21600* | Connection at 21,600 bps |
| 38 | 38 | CONNECT 24000* | Connection at 24,000 bps |
| 39 | 39 | CONNECT 26400* | Connection at 26,400 bps |
| 40 | 40 | CONNECT 28800* | Connection at 28,800 bps |
| 41 | 41 | CONNECT 31200* | Connection at 31,200 bps |
| 42 | 42 | CONNECT 33600* | Connection at 33,600 bps |

*Appears when the Extended Result Codes configuration option is enabled.

**Appears when the Extended Result Codes configuration option is set for Use_DTE_Rate. This displays the DTE data rate instead of the line rate.

*** Appears when the Extended Result Codes configuration option is set for Add/EC. If this configuration option is set for Add/V42,MNP, then V42b, V42, MNP5, MNP4, MNP3, MNP2, or NoEC appears. For either suffix type, if the modulation is V.34, /RX=xxxxx/TX=xxxxx is appended showing the VF rates in both directions.

**Table B-1**
**(3 of 3)**
**Result Codes**

| Numbers (1) | Numbers (2) | Word | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| 43 | 43 | CONNECT 21600/ EC*** | Connection at 21,600 bps with error control |
| 44 | 44 | CONNECT 24000/ EC*** | Connection at 24,000 bps with error control |
| 45 | 45 | CONNECT 26400/ EC*** | Connection at 26,400 bps with error control |
| 46 | 46 | CONNECT 28800/ EC*** | Connection at 28,800 bps with error control |
| 47 | 47 | CONNECT 31200/ EC*** | Connection at 31,200 bps with error control |
| 48 | 48 | CONNECT 33600/ EC*** | Connection at 33,600 bps with error control |

*** Appears when the Extended Result Codes configuration option is set for Add/EC. If this configuration option is set for Add/V42,MNP, then V42b, V42, MNP5, MNP4, MNP3, MNP2, or NoEC appears. For either suffix type, if the modulation is V.34, /RX=xxxxx/TX=xxxxx is appended showing the VF rates in both directions.

# Troubleshooting C

Overview . . . . . C-1

## Overview

Appendix B points out basic problems that can occur when operating a 3800*Plus* modem. Use Tables C-1 through C-6 to check out these problems. If you are having data communication difficulties, such as periodic character loss, random errors, or constant format errors, use the loopback tests described in Chapter 7, *Test Branch*. With these tests you can usually isolate the fault in your system by using the process of elimination. If problems continue to occur, contact your service representative.

**Table C-1**
**Modem Integrity**

| Symptom | Action |
|---|---|
| Modem did not pass power-up self-test | Contact your service representative. |
| Power LED does not light<br>LCD does not display | Make sure the modem's ON/Off switch is in the ON position.<br>Make sure the ac power transformer is connected to the ac power receptacle.<br>If Power LED and/or LCD do not operate, contact your service representative. |
| A problem is suspected after the power-up self-test | Perform a self-test via the modem's DCP or type AT&T9 if using AT commands.<br>Perform a local analog loopback with a Pattern test. If the modem consistently registers errors, contact your service representative.<br>If the modem passes the above tests and a problem still exists, then the problem is likely not with your modem. |

**Table C-2**
**Modem – DTE Connection**

| Symptom | Action |
|---|---|
| Modem does not accept or echo back AT commands | Verify that the cable between the Async port of the DTE and the modem is a standard RS-232 cable. If the cable is bad, replace it. (Null modem cables, also known as crossover cables, do not work in this application.)<br>Verify that the Command Echo Character configuration option is enabled. Refer to Line Dialer in Chapter 8, *Configure Branch*, or ATE command in Chapter 13, *AT Commands and S-Registers*.<br>Verify that the DTE Dialer Type configuration option is set to AT. Refer to *DTE Dialer* in Chapter 8, or the AT&M or AT&Q command in Chapter 13.<br>Verify that the Result Codes configuration option is enabled. Refer to *DTE Dialer* in Chapter 8, or the ATQ command in Chapter 13.<br>Reload the Async Dial factory configuration area to guarantee that all configuration options are returned to their proper setting.<br>Make sure that all AT commands are terminated with a carriage return.<br>Verify that the ASCII value of a carriage return matches what is used by the DTE and the modem. Refer to *DTE Dialer* in Chapter 8 or the S3 register in Chapter 13. Verify that the DTE has a valid character format. Valid format consists of 8 data bits with no parity or 7 data bits with even, odd, mark or space parity.<br>Verify that your equipment can support the DTE data rate. Refer to Async DTE Rate configuration option, *DTE Interface* in Chapter 8.<br>If using a PC, verify that the modem is attached to the correct communications port. |

**Table C-3**
**(1 of 2)**
**Modem – VF Connection**

| Symptom | Action |
|---|---|
| Modem does not receive a dial tone | Attach the telephone directly to the wall outlet to verify that a dial tone exists.<br>Make sure the VF line is connected to the modem's rear jack labeled Dial. |
| Modem does not go off-hook and answer an incoming call | Verify that the Auto-Answer Ring Count configuration option (S-Register 0) is set to a value other than 0 (disable).<br>Verify that the DTE is providing DTR to the modem.<br>If the DTE does not provide DTR to the modem, verify that the modem's DTR Action configuration option is set for Ignore. Refer to *DTE Dialer* in Chapter 8.<br>Verify that all cables are attached to the correct connectors on the rear of the modem. |

**Table C-3**
**(2 of 2)**
**Modem – VF Connection**

| Symptom | Action |
|---|---|
| Modem goes off-hook, answers, but does not connect | Perform a Local Analog Loopback test and verify that data entered at the DTE is echoed back to the DTE.<br>Verify that the originating modem is compatible.<br>Verify that originating modem recognizes your modem's answer tone.<br>Verify that originating modem supports your modem's modulation schemes. The 3800*Plus* modem recognizes CCITT V.34, V.32*terbo*, V.32bis, V.32, V.22bis, V.22, V.21, Bell 212A, and Bell 103J. It does not support other vendors' proprietary modulation schemes.<br>Force your modem to operate at the same modulation scheme as the originating modem to see if they connect. |
| Originate Mode | Verify that the modem's DTE Dialer configuration option is set to the correct setting: either AT, DTR Dialing, V.25bis Async, V.25bis Bisync, or V.25bis HDLC. |
| Modem does not go off-hook and begin dialing | If using AT Dialing, refer to Table C-2, Modem – DTE Connection.<br>If using DTR Dialing, verify the telephone number stored in directory location 1, and verify that the DTE is raising DTR from Off to ON to initiate a dial.<br>If using V.25bis Async, verify that the correct character format is set to 7 data bits with even parity and 1 stop bit, and the carriage return and line feed are used as command terminators.<br>If using V.25bis Bisync, verify that the correct character format uses two synchronous control characters and a start-of-text control character before the text block and an end-of-text control character after the text block.<br>If using V.25bis HDLC, verify that the correct character format uses flag, address, and control characters before the text block and a frame sequence check and flag after the text block. |
| Modem dials but does not connect | If the modem is operating behind a PBX, verify if a 9 and comma are needed before the telephone number.<br>Verify whether Tone or Pulse dialing is needed.<br>Verify if one modem is configured for Error Control or Disconnect and the other modem is configured for no Error Control. Try calling in Buffer mode.<br>If both modems use V.32bis or V.32 modulation, set the modem's V.32bis Train configuration option to Long. |
| Intermittent disconnects, high error rates, or excessive retransmissions | Perform an End-to-End test. Refer to *Pattern* located in Chapter 7, *Test Branch*. |
| Modem establishes and disconnects a call | You may have a poor VF connection. Disconnect and dial again.<br>The remote modem may have encountered an EC Disconnect, where the modem is configured to establish a call using error correction. If the modems cannot negotiate EC, then a disconnect occurs.<br>The remote modem may be in a forced Error Control mode (disconnect if there is no error control). Reconfigure your modem to V.42/MNP or Buffer and try again.<br>Check the LCD to verify the reason for disconnect.<br>Perform a Local Analog Loopback test. |
| High error rates occur when running a local loopback or self-test | Incoming rings can cause data errors during a loopback test. Abort the test, disconnect the modular VF cord, and restart the test. |

**Table C-4**
**Online Operation**

| Symptom | Action |
|---|---|
| Data scrambled | Verify that the character format (data bits, parity, and stop bits) is set to the same value in both modems. |
| Missing data during a transfer | Verify that you are using the same method of flow control for both the modem and the DTE.<br>If using XON/XOFF flow control, verify that the modem's parity matches the DTE's parity. |

**Table C-5**
**Leased-Line Operation**

| Symptom | Action |
|---|---|
| Modems do not train-up on leased lines | Verify that the correct cabling is used for your application. Refer to Chapter 2, *Installation.*<br>Verify that one modem is configured for Answer mode and the other is configured for Originate mode.<br>Verify that both modems are using the same modulation scheme.<br>Verify that modems are configured for the appropriate leased-line mode. For example, if you have a 4-wire leased line, then the modems must be configured for 4-wire operation. |
| Modems are configured for dial backup, but do not switch to dial lines if leased lines fail | Verify that both modems have the Auto Dial Backup configuration option enabled. |

**Table C-6**
**Dial Backup Operation**

| Symptom | Action |
|---|---|
| Dial backup line is present, but cannot connect | Verify that the correct telephone number for the remote modem is stored in directory location 1.<br>Verify that one modem has the Auto Dial Backup configuration option set for Disable and the other has it set to Enable. |
| Modem does not switch back to leased-line operation | Verify that the Auto Dial Standby configuration option is enabled. |

# Technical Specifications D

Table D-1 shows the technical specifications for 3800*Plus* modems.

**Table D-1**
**(1 of 3)**
**Technical Specifications for COMSPHERE 3800*Plus* Modems**

| Specifications | Criteria |
|---|---|
| **APPROVALS (110 Vac, 60 Hz only)** | |
| FCC Part 15 | Class A |
| FCC Part 68 | Registration Number: (See label on modem.) |
| UL | |
| 3810*Plus* (Model 3980)<br>3820*Plus* (Model 3982) | Listed to UL 1950 |
| 3811*Plus* (Model 3981) | Recognized to UL 1950 with COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier |
| CSA | |
| 3810*Plus* (Model 3980)<br>3820*Plus* (Model 3982) | Certified to CSA C22.2 No. 950-M89 |
| 3811*Plus* (Model 3981) | Certified as a component to CSA C22.2 No. 950-M89 with COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier |
| DOC | |
| 3810*Plus* (Model 3980)<br>3811*Plus* (Model 3981)<br>3820*Plus* (Model 3982) | Certification Number: (See label on modem.) |

**Table D-1**
**(2 of 3)**
**Technical Specifications for COMSPHERE 3800*Plus* Modems**

| Specifications | Criteria |
|---|---|
| **COMPATIBILITY** | **DIAL-LINE MODULATIONS**<br>Proprietary V.34 (33,600, 31,200 bps)<br>ITU-T V.34 (28,800, 26,400, 24,000, 21,600, 19,200, 16,800, 14,400,12,000, 9600, 7200, 4800, 2400 bps)<br>V.32*terbo* (19,200, 16,800 bps)<br>CCITT V.32bis (14,400, 12,000, 9600, 7200, 4800 bps)<br>CCITT V.32 (9600, 4800 bps)<br>CCITT V.22bis (2400 bps)<br>CCITT V.22 (1200 bps)<br>CCITT V.21 (300 bps)<br>Bell 212A (1200 bps)<br>Bell 103J (300 bps)<br>**LEASED-LINE MODULATIONS**<br>Proprietary V.34 (33,600, 31,200 bps)<br>ITU-T V.34 (28,800, 26,400, 24,000, 21,600, 19,200, 16,800, 14,400, 12,000, 9600, 7200, 4800, 2400 bps)<br>V.32*terbo* (19,200, 16,800 bps)<br>V.32bis (14,400, 12,000, 9600, 7200, 4800 bps)<br>V.32 (9600, 4800 bps)<br>V.33 (14,400, 12,000 bps) (optional)<br>V.29 (9600, 7200, 4800 bps) (optional)<br>V.22bis (2400 bps)<br>**FAX MODULATIONS**<br>CCITT V.17 (14,400 bps)<br>CCITT V.29 (9600, 7200 bps)<br>CCITT V.27 ter (4800, 2400 bps) |
| **DATA RATES** | |
| Dial Line | 33,600, 31,200, 28,800, 26,400, 24,000, 21,600, 19,200,16,800, 14,400, 12,000, 9600, 7200, 4800, 2400, 1200, or 300–0 bps |
| Leased Line | 33,600, 31,200, 28,800, 26,400, 24,000, 21,600, 19,200,16,800, 14,400, 12,000, 9600, 7200, 4800, or 2400 bps |
| **DTE RATES** | 115,200, 76,800, 57,600, 38,400, 28,800, 14,400, 12,000, 9600, 7200, 4800, 2400, 1200, 0–300 bps |
| **ERROR CONTROL** | CCITT V.42<br>MNP 4–2 |
| **DATA COMPRESSION** | CCITT V.42bis<br>MNP Class 5 |
| **ENVIRONMENT** | |
| Operating Temperature | 32°F (0°C) to 122°F (50°C) |
| Relative Humidity | 5% to 90% (noncondensing) |
| Shock and Vibration | Withstands normal shipping |
| Storage Temperature | –4°F (–20°C) to 158°F (70°C) |

**Table D-1**
**(3 of 3)**
**Technical Specifications for COMSPHERE 3800*Plus* Modems**

| Specifications | Criteria |
|---|---|
| **AC POWER REQUIREMENTS** | |
| 3810*Plus* and 3820*Plus* | 110 Vac, 50 to 60 Hz |
| **POWER CONSUMPTION** | |
| 3810*Plus* and 3820*Plus* | 8 watts (typical, including power supply, speaker off) |
| 3811*Plus* | 6 watts (typical, each card)<br><br>Speaker consumption is approximately 1 watt at high volume. |
| **HEAT DISSIPATION** | |
| 3810*Plus* and 3820*Plus* | 27.3 BTU/Hr (typical, including power supply, speaker off) |
| 3811*Plus* | 20.5 BTU/Hr (typical, each card) |
| **DIMENSIONS** | |
| Weight | 2.5 pounds (1.14 kg) 3810*Plus* and 3820*Plus* (without power supply)<br>1.0 pounds (0.45 kg) 3811*Plus* |
| Height | 2.1 inches (5.4 cm) 3810*Plus* and 3820*Plus*<br>7.1 inches (18.1 cm) 3811*Plus* |
| Width | 7.6 inches (19.4 cm) 3810*Plus* and 3820*Plus*<br>1.8 inches (4.6 cm) 3811*Plus* |
| Depth | 12.1 inches (30.8 cm) 3810*Plus* and 3820*Plus*<br>13.4 inches (34.0 cm) 3811*Plus* |
| **TRANSMIT LEVEL** | |
| Dial Line | Permissive (–9 dBm), Selectable –32 dBm through –10 dBm, ETC 1.0, ETC 1.1 |
| Leased Line | 0 through –15 dBm (in 1 dBm decrements) |
| **TELEPHONE INTERFACE** | |
| Dial-Line Connectivity | |
| 3810*Plus* and 3820*Plus* | RJ11C Permissive |
| 3811*Plus* | RJ21X Permissive 50-pin connector<br>RJ11C Permissive Service Line |
| Leased-Line Connectivity | |
| 3810*Plus* | JM8 |
| 3820*Plus* | JM8 using JM8 to RJ11 Crossover Cable (see Appendix E) |
| 3811*Plus* | 50-pin mass termination |
| **DTE INTERFACE** | |
| 25-pin D-subminiature connector | EIA-232-D/CCITT V.24 |
| **VOICE FREQUENCY LINE REQUIREMENTS** | 2-wire dial (PSTN) or 4-wire/2-wire leased line |

# Pin Assignments E

EIA-232-D Pin Assignments . . . . . E-2
VF Connector Pin Assignments . . . . . E-3
JM8 to RJ11 Crossover Cable . . . . . E-4

Appendix E lists the pin assignments for EIA-232-D and VF TELCO interfaces, and shows the wiring diagram for an 8-position to 6-position cable.

# EIA-232-D Pin Assignments

Table E-1 lists the EIA-232-D pin assignments for the modem.

**Table E-1**
**EIA-232-D Pin Assignments**

| RS-232 Pin | Name | EIA Circuit | CCITT | Signal Source | Circuit Function |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | — | AA | 101 | — | Shield |
| 2 | TXD | BA | 103 | DTE | Transmit Data |
| 3 | RXD | BB | 104 | DCE | Receive Data |
| 4 | RTS | CA | 105 | DTE | Request-to-Send |
| 5 | CTS | CB | 106 | DCE | Clear-to-Send |
| 6 | DSR | CC | 107 | DCE | Data Set Ready |
| 7 | SG | AB | 102 | — | Signal Ground |
| 8 | LSD | CF | 109 | DCE | Line Signal Detect |
| 9 | +10V | — | — | — | Reserved for test purposes (may be used to drive one RS-232 load) |
| 10 | –10V | — | — | — | Reserved for test purposes (may be used to drive one RS-232 load) |
| 11 | — | — | — | — | Unassigned |
| 12 | CT112 | CI | 112 | DCE | Data Signal Rate Select |
| 13 | — | — | — | — | Reserved for future function |
| 14 | — | — | — | — | Reserved for future function |
| 15 | TXC | DB | 114 | DCE | Transmit Clock |
| 16 | — | — | — | — | Reserved for future function |
| 17 | RXC | DD | 115 | DCE | Receive Clock |
| 18 | CT141 | LL | 141 | DTE | Local Loopback |
| 20 | DTR | CD | 108 | DTE | Data Terminal Ready |
| 21 | CT140 | RL | 140 | DTE | Remote Loopback |
| 22 | RI | CE | 125 | DCE | Ring Indicator |
| 23 | CT111 | CH | 111 | DTE | Data Rate Selector |
| 24 | XTXC | DA | 113 | DTE | External Clock |
| 25 | TEST | TM | 142 | DCE | Test Mode |

# VF Connector Pin Assignments

Table E-2 lists the connector pin assignments for 3810*Plus* and 3820*Plus* modular jacks and the pin assignments for the TELCO jacks (Figure E-1).

**Table E-2**
**VF Connector Pin Assignments**

| Pin | 3810*Plus* Leased | Dial/ 3820*Plus* Leased | Type of Telco Jack | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | RJ11 | JM8 |
| 1 | 4-Wire: TX<br>2-Wire: TX/RX | | | Ring 1 |
| 2 | 4-Wire: TX<br>2-Wire: TX/RX | | | Tip 1 |
| 3 | | | | |
| 4 | | Ring/<br>2-Wire<br>Leased | Ring | |
| 5 | | Tip/<br>2-wire<br>Leased | Tip | |
| 6 | | | | |
| 7 | 4-Wire: RX | | | Tip |
| 8 | 4-Wire: RX | | | Ring |

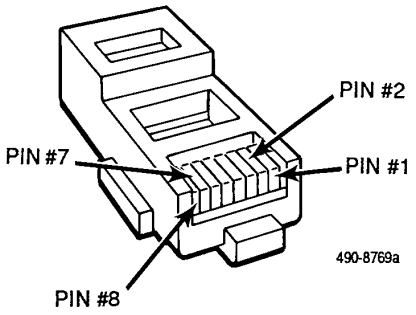



**Figure E-1. VF Pin Orientation**

# JM8 to RJ11 Crossover Cable

For 2-wire leased-line connections to a JM8 network interface, an 8-position to 6-position crossover cable (see Figure E-2) must be used according to the following FCC requirements:

*"The RJ series of jacks should not be used for connecting data equipment to nonswitched private line networks – specifically, the service equivalents of the pre-divestiture Series 3002 (Category II, Tariff #260) service. There is a substantial difference in transmit levels permitted in the private line service and those permitted in the public switched network. The industry standard is now an 8-pin keyed modular jack known as the USOC JM8 (Bellcore Technical Reference: TR-EOP-000242, Issue 1, released May 1985.) When ordering the installation of the USOC JM8, specify the appropriate wiring options:*

*1. 2-wire operations*
*2. 4-wire operations w/o TEK leads*
*3. 4-wire operations with TEK leads*

*TEK leads are for loopback purposes.*

*A 50-pin version is being considered for multiple line connections."*

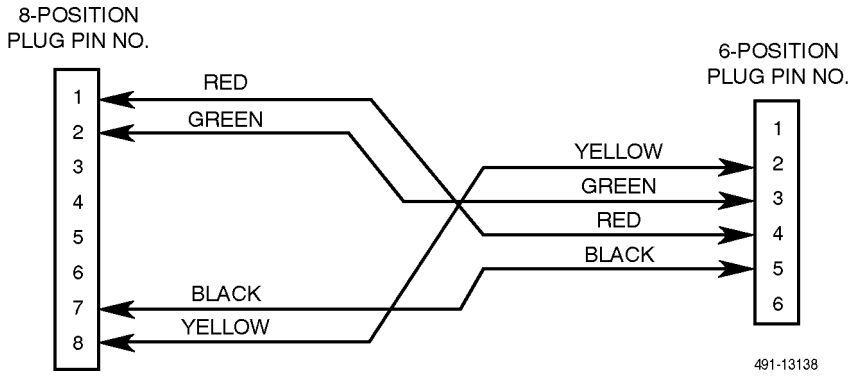



**Figure E-2. Wiring Diagram — 8-Position to 6-Position Crossover Cable**

# CCITT V.25bis Dialing Commands and Responses

F


Overview . . . . . F-1
Call Request Commands . . . . . F-2
Call Request with Number Provided (CRN) . . . . . F-2
Call Request with Stored Memory Address Provided (CRS) . . . . . F-2
Call Response . . . . . F-2
Call Failure Indication (CFI) . . . . . F-2
Call Connecting (CNX) . . . . . F-2
Call Answer Commands . . . . . F-3
Incoming Call (INC) . . . . . F-3
Disregard Incoming Call (DIC) . . . . . F-3
Connect Incoming Call (CIC) . . . . . F-3
Program Normal (PRN) . . . . . F-3
Request List of Stored Numbers (RLN) . . . . . F-3
List Stored Number Response (LSN) . . . . . F-3
Command Response . . . . . F-4
Valid (VAL) . . . . . F-4
Invalid (INV) . . . . . F-4


## Overview

CCITT V.25bis is an international dialing protocol that permits direct and stored number dialing using DTEs in either Asynchronous, Bisynchronous, or HDLC operating mode. The 3800*Plus* modems support V.25bis request and answer commands that initiate and cancel dialing, program commands that allow you to create and enter telephone numbers to memory, and list commands that display all telephone numbers stored in directory locations. As commands are entered from the DTE, 3800*Plus* modems issue a response to the DTE which indicates if the call failed or connected, or if the command is valid or invalid.

The following section discusses those V.25bis commands supported by 3800*Plus* modems and the response to those commands.

Tables F-1 and F-2 in the *Command Response* section list the V.25bis command and response and the analogous AT command.

**NOTE**

The 3800*Plus* modem must be configured for V.25bis dialing. Refer to DTE Dialer Type configuration option in Chapter 8, *Configure Branch*.

# Call Request Commands

Call Request commands are issued from the DTE to the modem and are responsible for initiating any dial calls. Call Request commands include Call Request with Number Provided (CRN) and Call Request with Stored Memory Address Provided (CRS).

## Call Request with Number Provided (CRN)

The CRN command dials the telephone number entered from the DTE. CRN is similar to the ATD command.

The CRN command format is:

CRN*n*

***Where:*** *n* is the dial string. The following characters are permitted:

| | |
|---|---|
| **T** | DTMF Dialing |
| **P** | Pulse Dialing |
| **0–9** | DTMF Tones or Pulse Dialed Digits |
| *** # A B C D** | DTMF Tones |
| **R** | Reverse Dial |
| **:** | Wait for Dial Tone |
| **,** or < | User-Defined Pause |
| **&** | Flash Hook |
| = or > | Delimiters |

## Call Request with Stored Memory Address Provided (CRS)

The CRS command dials the telephone number stored in the request directory location. CRS is similar to the ATDS command.

The CRS command format is:

CRS*x*

***Where:*** *x* is directory location 1–10.

The modem responds to the command with either a VAL (valid) or INV (invalid) response followed by a call progress report such as connect (CNX) or failure (CFI).

# Call Response

## Call Failure Indication (CFI)

The CFI response is issued to the DTE if the modem fails a CRN or CRS command. CFI is similar to the AT result codes BUSY, NO ANSWER, NO CARRIER, NO DIALTONE, and ERROR.

The CFI response format is:

CFI*xx*

***Where:*** *xx* is one of

| | |
|---|---|
| **ET** | Engaged tone |
| **NS** | Number not stored |
| **CB** | Local DCE busy |
| **RT** | Timeout on ring tone |
| **AB** | Abort call on time-out |
| **NT** | Answer tone not detected |
| **FC** | Forbidden call |

ET is similar to the Call Failure Messages, Busy Signal and Trunk Busy and the result code BUSY.

NS is similar to the Common Operational Message Invalid Number and the result code ERROR.

CB is similar to the Call Failure Messages, Dial Line in Use and No Dial-Test and the result code ERROR.

RT is similar to the Call Failure Message No Answer Tone and the result code NO CARRIER.

AB is similar to the Call Failure Messages, No Dial Tone and No Dial-DTR and the result code NO DIALTONE and ERROR.

NT is similar to the Call Failure Message No Quiet Answer and the result code NO ANSWER.

## Call Connecting (CNX)

The CNX response informs the DTE that the modem has connected to the remote modem. CNX is similar to the AT result code CONNECT.

The CNX response format is CNX.

# Call Answer Commands

Call Answer commands disable or enable the modem's AutoAnswer function. These commands are issued from the DTE. Call Answer commands include Incoming Call (INC), Disregard Incoming Call (DIC) and Connect Incoming Call (CIC).

### Incoming Call (INC)

The INC response informs the DTE that the modem has detected a ring tone. At this point, the DTE can issue the DIC command to disable the modem from answering the call. INC is similar to the AT result code RING.

### Disregard Incoming Call (DIC)

The DIC command prevents the modem from answering an incoming call. This command is only valid once the DTE receives an incoming call (INC) response from the modem. A DIC must be issued within 5 seconds after receiving an INC.

The DIC command format is DIC.

If DIC is issued within 5 seconds, the modem sends the VAL response to the DTE. If DIC is issued after 5 seconds, INV is returned.

### Connect Incoming Call (CIC)

The CIC command forces the modem to cancel any DIC commands and answer an incoming call. This command is only valid when the DTE issues a DIC command. CIC must be issued within 10 seconds after sending a DIC. CIC is similar to the ATA command.

The CIC command format is CIC.

If CIC is issued within 10 seconds, the modem sends the VAL response to the DTE. If CIC is issued after 10 seconds, INV is returned.

# Program Normal (PRN)

The Program Normal (PRN) command allows the DTE to enter and store a telephone number to a specific directory location. PRN is similar to the AT&Z command.

The PRN command format is:

PRN*x;n*

***Where:*** *x* is the directory location 1–10.
*n* is the telephone number.

# Request List of Stored Numbers (RLN)

The Request List of Stored Numbers (RLN) command displays telephone numbers stored in the modem's directory location. If the RLN command is entered without specifying a directory location, then all directory locations and telephone numbers are displayed. If a directory location is entered, then only that telephone number are displayed.

The RLN command format is:

RLN

which displays all directory locations,

or

RLN*x*

***Where:*** *x* is a directory location.

# List Stored Number Response (LSN)

LSN is a response to an RLN command issued by the DTE. If a directory location is specified, then the telephone number for that location is displayed. If no directory location is specified, then all telephone numbers stored in memory are displayed.

The LSN response format is:

LSN*x;n*

***Where:*** *x* is the directory location.
*n* is the telephone number.

# Command Response

A Command Response indicates that the command entered was a valid or invalid entry. Command Response includes Valid (VAL) and Invalid (INV).

## Valid (VAL)

The VAL response indicates that the modem has accepted the V.25bis command issued by the DTE. VAL is similar to the AT result code OK.

## Invalid (INV)

The INV response indicates that the modem has received an incorrect V.25bis command from the DTE. INV is similar to the AT result code ERROR.

The INV response format is:

INV*xx*

***Where:*** *xx* is

| | |
|---|---|
| **CU** | command unknown |
| **MS** | message syntax error |
| **PS** | parameter syntax error |
| **PV** | parameter value error |

Table F-1 lists V.25bis commands supported by 3800*Plus* modems.

**Table F-1**
**V.25bis Commands**

| V.25bis Command | Description | AT Command/ S-Register Equivalent |
|---|---|---|
| **CALL REQUEST COMMANDS** | | |
| CRN | Call Request with Number Provided | ATD |
| CRS | Call Request with Memory Address | ATDS |
| **CALL ANSWER COMMANDS** | | |
| INC | Incoming Call Indication | RING |
| DIC | Disregard Incoming Call | NONE |
| CIC | Connect Incoming Call | ATA |
| **PROGRAM COMMAND** | | |
| PRN | Program Normal | AT&Z |
| **LIST REQUEST** | | |
| RLN | Request to List Stored Number | NONE |

Table F-2 lists V.25bis response messages supported by 3800*Plus* modems.

**Table F-2**
**V.25bis Response Messages**

| V.25bis Command | Description | AT Command/ S-Register Equivalent |
|---|---|---|
| **CALL RESPONSE** | | |
| CFI | Call Failure Indication | BUSY, NO ANSWER, NO CARRIER, NO DIAL TONE, ERROR |
| CNX | Call Connecting Indication | CONNECT |
| **LIST RESPONSE** | | |
| LSN | List Stored Number | NONE |
| **COMMAND RESPONSE** | | |
| VAL | Valid Command | OK |
| INV | Invalid Command | ERROR |

# Default Configuration Options G

Overview . . . . . G-1

## Overview

Table G-1 lists all default configuration options for the main four factory preset configurations. (Additional configuration options set by the Cellular (Mobile) and Cellular (PSTN) factory preset configurations are listed under the &F5 and &F6 commands in Chapter 13.) An N/A indicates that the value for this configuration option does not appear on the LCD if that factory default configuration is selected.

**Table G-1**
**(1 of 4)**
**Factory Default Configuration Options**

| Configuration Option | Async Dial and UNIX Dial Default Settings | Sync Dial Default Settings | Sync Leased Answer/ Originate Mode Default Settings |
|---|---|---|---|
| **DTE INTERFACE** | | | |
| Async/Sync Mode | Async | Sync | Sync |
| Async DTE Rate | 19,200 bps | N/A | N/A |
| Async # Data Bits | 8 | N/A | N/A |
| Async Parity Bit | None | N/A | N/A |
| Async # Stop Bits | 1 | N/A | N/A |
| DTR Action | Ignore | Standard RS232 | Ignore |
| DSR Control | Forced ON | Standard RS232 | Standard RS232 |
| RTS Action | Ignore | Standard RS232 | Standard RS232 |
| CTS Control | Forced On<br>Wink When Disc[1] | Standard RS232 | Standard RS232 |
| RTS/CTS Delay | 0 msec | 0 msec | 0 msec |
| LSD Control | Standard RS232<br>Wink When Disc[1] | Standard RS232 | Standard RS232 |
| TX Clock Source | N/A | Internal | Internal |
| CT111 Rate Control | Disable | Disable | Disable |
| DTE Rate = VF Rate | Disable | Disable | Disable |

[1] UNIX Dial default setting only.

**Table G-1**
**(2 of 4)**
**Factory Default Configuration Options**

| Configuration Option | Async Dial and UNIX Dial Default Settings | Sync Dial Default Settings | Sync Leased Answer/ Originate Mode Default Settings |
|---|---|---|---|
| **DTE DIALER** | | | |
| DTE Dialer Type | AT | Disable | Disable |
| AT Escape Character | 043 ASCII | N/A | N/A |
| Escape Guard Time | 1sec | N/A | N/A |
| Break Forces Escape | Disable | N/A | N/A |
| Command Character Echo | Enable | N/A | N/A |
| Carriage Return Character | 013 ASCII | N/A | N/A |
| Backspace Character | 008 ASCII | N/A | N/A |
| Linefeed Character | 010 ASCII | N/A | N/A |
| Result Codes | Enable<br>Enable In Originate[1] | N/A | N/A |
| Extended Result Codes | Enable | N/A | N/A |
| Result Codes Format | Words | N/A | N/A |
| AT Command Mode[2] | Normal | N/A | N/A |
| V.25bis Coding | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| V.25bis Idle Fill | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| V.25bis New Line Character | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| **LINE DIALER** | | | |
| Auto Answer Ring Count | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Dialer Type | Tone | Tone | Tone |
| Dial Tone Detect | Enable | Enable | Enable |
| Blind Dial Pause | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| Busy Tone Detect | Enable | Enable | Enable |
| "," Pause Time | 2 sec | 2 sec | 2 sec |
| No Answer Timeout | 45 sec | 45 sec | 45 sec |
| Fast Disconnect | Disable | Disable | Disable |
| Long Space Disconnect | Enable | Disable | Enable |
| No Carrier Disconnect | 5 sec | 5 sec | 5 sec |
| No Data Disconnect | 60 min | 60 min | 60 min |
| Auto Make Busy (3811*Plus* only) | Disable | Disable | Disable |
| Make Busy via DTR | Disable | Disable | Disable |
| MI/MIC Dialing | Disable | Disable | Disable |

[1] UNIX Dial default setting only.

[2] This configuration option is not changed by loading factory default configuration options.

**Table G-1**
**(3 of 4)**
**Factory Default Configuration Options**

| Configuration Option | Async Dial and UNIX Dial Default Settings | Sync Dial Default Settings | Sync Leased Answer/ Originate Mode Default Settings |
|---|---|---|---|
| **DIAL LINE** | | | |
| Modulation | V.34 | V.34 | V.34 |
| Dial Line Rate | 28800(V34) | 28800(V34) | 28800(V34) |
| Automode | Enable | Enable | N/A |
| Autorate | Enable | Enable | Enable |
| Dial Transmit Level | Permissive –9 dBm | Permissive –9 dBm | Permissive –9 dBm |
| V.22bis Guard Tone | Disable | Disable | Disable |
| Train Time | Long | Long | Long |
| Asymmetric Rate | Enable | Enable | Enable |
| **LEASED LINE** | | | |
| Leased Mode | N/A | N/A | 4-wire LL Answer[3]<br>4-wire LL Orig[4] |
| Modulation | N/A | N/A | V.34 |
| Leased Line Rate | N/A | N/A | 28800(V34) |
| Autorate | N/A | N/A | Enable |
| Leased Transmit Level | N/A | N/A | 0 dBm |
| Auto Dial Backup | N/A | N/A | Disable |
| Auto Dial Standby | N/A | N/A | Disable |
| Carrier On Level | N/A | N/A | –43 dBm |
| **V.42/MNP/BUFFER** | | | |
| Error Control Mode | V.42/MNP or Buffer | N/A | N/A |
| V.42bis Compression | Enable | N/A | N/A |
| MNP5 Compression | Enable | N/A | N/A |
| EC Negotiate Buffer | Disable | N/A | N/A |
| EC Fallback Character | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| Flow Control of DTE | CTS to DTE | N/A | N/A |
| Flow Control of Modem | Disable | N/A | N/A |
| XON/XOFF Passthrough | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| Modem-to-Modem Flow Control | Disable | N/A | N/A |
| Break Buffer Control | Keep Data | N/A | N/A |
| Send Break Control | Data First | N/A | N/A |
| Buffer Disconnect Delay | 10 seconds | N/A | N/A |

[3] Sync Leased Answer Mode default setting.

[4] Sync Leased Originate Mode default setting.

**Table G-1**
**(4 of 4)**
**Factory Default Configuration Options**

| Configuration Option | Async Dial and UNIX Dial Default Settings | Sync Dial Default Settings | Sync Leased Answer/ Originate Mode Default Settings |
|---|---|---|---|
| **TESTS** | | | |
| DTE RL (CT140) | Disable | Disable | Disable |
| DTE LL (CT141) | Disable | Disable | Disable |
| Test Timeout | Disable | Disable | Disable |
| Receive Remote Loopback | Enable | Enable | Enable |
| V.54 Address | Disable | Disable | Disable |
| V.54 Device Type | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| **MISC** | | | |
| Straps When Disconnect[2] | No Change | No Change | No Change |
| Speaker Control | On Until Carrier | On Until Carrier | On Until Carrier |
| Speaker Volume | Medium | Medium | Medium |
| Access from Remote[2] | Enable | Enable | Enable |
| Remote Access Password[2] | 00000000 | 00000000 | 00000000 |
| Directory Location Callback | Disable | Disable | Disable |
| Network Management Address[2] | 256 | 256 | 256 |
| NMS Call Messages[2] | Call Connect & Progress | Call Connect & Progress | Call Connect & Progress |
| Network Position | N/A | N/A | Tributary Control[5] |
| CellulrRJ11Adpt | Disable | Disable | Disable |
| **SECURITY** | | | |
| Entry Wait Time[2] | 20 sec | 20 sec | 20 sec |
| VF Prompt Type[2] | 2nd Dial Tone | 2nd Dial Tone | 2nd Dial Tone |
| DTE Password Tries[2] | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| DTE Password Termination Character[2] | 013 ASCII | 013 ASCII | 013 ASCII |
| Password Backspace Character[2] | 008 ASCII | 008 ASCII | 008 ASCII |
| Answer Security Mode[2] | No_Answ_Sec | No_Answ_Sec | No_Answ_Sec |
| Originate Security Mode[2] | No_OrigSec | No_OrigSec | No_OrigSec |

[2] This configuration option is not changed by loading factory default configuration options.

[5] 3811*Plus* default setting.

# Equipment List H

| Equipment | Feature/Part Number |
|---|---|
| Model 3810*Plus* (110 v) | 3980-A2-201 |
| Model 3811*Plus* | 3981-B1-001 |
| Model 3820*Plus* (110 v) | 3982-A2-201 |
| V.29 Feature | 3980-C1-002 |
| V.33 Feature | 3980-C1-003 |
| Expanded Security Feature (for 3811*Plus* modems only) | 3980-C1-004 |
| User's Guide | 3980-M1-001 |
| 6-position, 4-wire modular cord, 7-foot length | 125-0067-0031 |
| 8-position, 8-wire modular cord, 14-foot length | 125-0053-1431 |
| 8-position to 6-position (JM8 to RJ11) crossover modular cable | 125-0054-1531 |
| Power Supply (110 v) | 327-0073-0131 |

# Glossary

**Active (Operating)** — A configuration area containing configuration options currently in use by the modem. When a power cycle occurs, a reset is performed, or a save is issued using the DCP, this area is updated with the contents of Active (Saved).

**Active (Saved)** — A nonvolatile configuration area containing the most recently saved configuration options. Any changes made to configuration options can be saved using either the DCP's Save command or by issuing an AT&W0 command.

**analog loop** — See local analog loop.

**analog signal** — A signal, such as a voice, that varies continuously.

**Answer mode** — The modem is in a state where it is ready to receive an incoming call. For example, an ATA (Answer) command has been issued to place the modem into online answer mode. The modem has been forced off-hook and is generating an answer tone, beginning the handshaking process with the calling modem.

**ASCII** — This code (American Standard Code for Information Interchange) is a 7-bit code which establishes compatibility between data services. ASCII is the standard for data transmission over telephone lines. The ASCII code consists of 32 control characters (nondisplayed) and 96 displayed characters. See Appendix F.

**Async Dial** — A factory preset configuration area containing the configuration options most often used in asynchronous dial networks.

**asynchronous transmission** — A data transmission that is synchronized by a transmission start bit at the beginning of a character (five to eight bits) and one or more stop bits at the end.

**AT command set** — A group of commands, issued from an asynchronous DTE, that allow control of the modem while in Command mode. All commands must begin with the characters AT and end with a carriage return.

**AT prefix** — A prefix issued before every AT command (except A/ and +++) which identifies the DTE's data rate, parity, and character length.

**autobaud** — Modem automatically determines the asynchronous DTE data rate when using AT commands.

**automatic answer** — A capability to respond to a call received over a dial line.

**automatic dial backup** When leased-line operation fails, this function forces the modem to dial the telephone number stored in directory location 1; communication over the dial network continues with the remote modem. For a 3800*Plus* modem to perform this properly, the telephone number in directory location 1 must be the telephone number at the remote site. Also, the Auto Dial Backup configuration option in one modem must be enabled while the other modem must have the Auto Answer Ring Number configuration option enabled.

**automatic dial standby** When operating in Dial Backup mode, this function forces the modem to periodically check the quality of the leased line. If the leased line is found to be at normal operating condition, the modem disconnects from the dial network and continues normal operation over the leased-line network.

**backbone network** The primary route from a control modem to its first tributary when the communications network contains extended controls.

**backplane** A common bus at the rear of the COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier connecting each circuit card slot to the SDCP and/or SDU. It also distributes low-voltage ac power to each slot.

**baud** A unit of signaling speed that is equal to the number of symbols per second. This is not necessarily the same as bits per second, although the terms are frequently interchanged.

**bis** Latin for “twice.” Used to distinguish the second version of a standard from other versions; e.g., V.32bis.

**Bisync** Binary Synchronous Communications. An IBM® communications protocol that has become an industry standard. It uses a defined set of control characters and control character sequences for synchronized transmission of binary-coded data between stations in a data communications system.

**bit** A contraction of binary digit. A bit, which is the smallest unit of information, represents the choice between a one or a zero (sometimes called mark or space).

**bps** Bits per second. Indicates the speed at which bits are transmitted across a data connection.

**buffer** A storage device used to compensate for differences in the data flow rate when transmitting data from one device to another.

**byte** A sequence of successive bits (usually eight) handled as a unit in data transmission.

**Call Setup** Top-Level menu branch that contains all the functions necessary to dial telephone numbers stored in directory locations, answer incoming calls, disconnect calls, and save telephone numbers to directory locations.

**carrier** The rack mounting that contains 17 slots: 1 control slot for an SDU and 16 modem slots. See data carrier.

**carrier-mount** A modem that is designed for installation in a COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier and used at central-site operations. Up to 16 modems can be installed per carrier, with 6 carriers per cabinet.

**CCITT** An advisory committee (Consultative Committee on International Telephone and Telegraph) established by the United Nations to recommend communications standards and policies. Now called ITU-T.

**character** A letter, figure, number, punctuation, or other symbols.

**character echo** A way to check the accuracy of data transmission by sending (displaying) all the characters being transmitted to the monitor.

**circuit pack lock** A screw lock tab installed over a circuit card's latch release tab to prevent the unit from being removed without a tool. It is used on SDUs, modems, and filler panels.

**Class 1 fax** A fax modem standard. Under Class 1 computer software handles most of the protocol, compression, and conversion tasks.

**Class 2 fax** A fax modem standard. Under Class 2 the modem handles most of the protocol, compression, and conversion tasks as well as modulation, leaving the computer free for other work.

**command line** Contains the command(s) instructing the modem to perform a function. Command lines begin with the AT prefix (unless disabled), and are executed when you press the Return key.

**Command mode** One of two general modem operating modes. When in Command mode, the modem accepts commands instead of transmitting or receiving data.

**configuration area** One of five areas within the Configure branch containing modem settings. Configuration areas include Active (Operating), Active (Saved), Customer 1, Customer 2, and Factory.

**configuration option** Modem software that sets specific operating parameters for the modem. Sometimes referred to as straps.

**Configure** Top-Level menu branch that contains all the modem's configuration options.

**connector** An outlet on equipment and cables that provides a connection.

**CSA** Canadian Standards Association.

**CTS** Clear-to-Send. A signal indicating that the modem is ready for the DTE to transmit data.

**Customer 1** A user-defined configuration area containing customized configuration options for a specific application.

**Customer 2** A user-defined configuration area containing customized configuration options for a specific application.

**data bank** An area within the modem used to store the modem's firmware. 3800*Plus* modems have two data banks.

**data carrier** A continuous frequency signal that can be modulated by another signal that contains information to be transmitted.

**data compression** The elimination of empty fields, redundancies, and gaps in order to reduce storage capacity needs and the amount of data to be transmitted. Anything that is eliminated is restored after the data is received.

**Data mode** One of two general modem operating modes. When in Data mode, the modem transmits and receives data instead of accepting commands.

**DB-25 connector** A 25-pin connector that is used to connect a cable which enables communications between two devices.

**dBm** A decibel referenced to one milliwatt. This unit measures relative signal power.

**DCE** The equipment (Data Communications Equipment or Data Circuit Terminating Equipment) that provides the functions required to establish, maintain, and end a connection. This equipment also provides the signal conversion required for communication between the DTE and the telephone line. A modem is a DCE.

**DCP** Diagnostic Control Panel. The face of the modem that continuously provides status information about the modem's operation and allows an operator to manage its operation. This is a generic term used for both the standalone and carrier-mounted models. See SDCP.

**demodulation** The process of recovering data from a modulated carrier wave.

**dial command modifiers** A modifier used in the dial string that instructs the modem how to process a dialed telephone number.

**dial line** A communications circuit that is established by a switched circuit connection in the dial network.

**dial network** See PSTN.

**Dial Standby** A function available when the modem is operating in Dial Backup mode, allowing the modem to switch back to lease-line operation while still maintaining the dial-line connection.

**dial string** A series of characters that consists of numbers and modifiers used to dial a telephone number.

**digital signal** A signal composed of only two discrete values, representing the binary digits 0 and 1.

**directory location** Nonvolatile memory that stores up to ten telephone numbers. Each directory location can have up to 40 characters entered.

**DOC** Canadian Department of Communication.

**download** A process that transfers modem firmware from a locally attached PC to a modem or allows the cloning of firmware from a local modem to a remote modem. Also, the process of moving data from a host computer to an attached computer.

**DTE** The equipment (Data Terminal Equipment), such as a computer or terminal, that provides data in the form of digital signals.

**edit area** A temporary work area used to view and change configuration options from the DCP without impacting modem operation. The edit area can be loaded from one of five configuration option areas, Active (Operating), Active (Saved), Customer 1, Customer 2, or Factory.

**EIA** Electronic Industries Association. This organization provides standards for the data communications industry.

**EPROM** Erasable programmable read-only memory.

**error control** An algorithm used to correct data transmission errors.

**escape sequence** Default setting is +++. This sequence lets you switch your modem from Data mode to Command mode.

**extended result codes** An asynchronous message (in either numbers or words) that includes VF data rate and error control information the modem sends to the DTE after executing or trying to execute a command.

**fax modem** A modem capable of emulating some features of a fax machine. Working under the control of fax software, a fax modem can communicate with a fax machine or with another fax modem.

**fax software** A program or system of programs installed on a computer that allow a fax modem to send and receive facsimile images.

**FCC** Federal Communications Commission. Board of Commissioners that regulates all interstate and foreign electrical communication systems that originate from the United States.

**full-duplex** Simultaneous, two-way communications.

**function key** One of three keys on the DCP that allows you to select or increment an LCD entry. Function keys are labeled F1, F2, and F3.

**Group III** A fax standard that specifies a rate of transmission of about one page per minute.

**half-duplex** Two-way data communications allowed in only one direction at a time.

**handshaking** The exchange of predetermined codes and signals (tones) to establish a connection between two modems.

**HDLC** High-Level Data Link Control. A communications protocol defined by ISO.

**hidden choice indicator** A symbol appearing in the upper right-hand corner of the LCD, indicating that more selections are available than what appears on the LCD.

**host** A computer attached to a network that shares its information and devices with the rest of the network.

**Hz** A unit of frequency (hertz) that equals one cycle per second.

**idle** A state in which the modem's operating parameters can be modified or commands can be issued to the modem using either AT commands or the DCP.

**ITU-T** The Telecommunications Standardization Sector of the International Telecommunications Union, an advisory committee established by the United Nations to recommend communications standards and policies. Before March 1993 it was called CCITT.

**JM8** A jack used for leased-line networks. Pins 1 and 2 are the transmit pair and Pins 7 and 8 are the receive pair.

**keypad** A set of seven keys surrounding the DCP's LCD. These keys are used to select configuration options and to maneuver through the DCP.

| | |
|---|---|
| **LCD** | Liquid Crystal Display. A thin sandwich of two sealed glass plates containing liquid crystal material. When voltage is applied, the amount of light able to pass through the glass plates is altered so that messages may be ‘‘written” on the display. |
| **leased line** | A private line connection exclusively for the user. No dialing is necessary. |
| **LED** | Light-Emitting Diode. A light or status indicator on the DCP that glows in response to the presence of a certain condition (e.g., Alrm). |
| **local analog loopback** | The modem’s transmit VF signal is looped to its receiver. |
| **long space disconnect** | A disconnect can occur if the modem receives an extended space from a remote modem; for example, when a remote modem is commanded to disconnect, it transmits a continuous space to the modem before disconnecting. |
| **loopback test** | Any test that verifies a device’s integrity by connecting the device’s output of one direction to the device’s input of the other direction, then checking the received signal for errors. |
| **LSD** | Line Signal Detect. A signal between the DTE and modem indicating energy exists on the transmission circuit. |
| **menu tree** | The structure containing the 3800*Plus* menu hierarchy starting at a Top-Level menu and extending down to various modem functions. |
| **MNP** | This protocol (Microcom Networking Protocol) detects and corrects data errors caused by telephone line noise and signal distortion. MNP5 includes data compression. |
| **modem** | (Modulator/DEModulator). A device that transforms signals from digital to analog form and vice versa. |
| **modulation** | The process of varying some characteristics (usually amplitude, frequency, and/or phase) of a carrier wave to form data transmissions. |
| **network** | A communications circuit. |
| **network address** | The customer-assigned diagnostic address of a tributary modem. |
| **NIM** | Network Interface Module. The interface provided, up to two per carrier, for the public switched telephone network (PSTN) used by 3811*Plus* modems. |
| **NMS** | Network Management System. A set of diagnostic and configuration management tools for a data communication network, consisting of software programs and dedicated computer hardware. |
| **off-hook** | The condition of a telephone or modem that is being used to establish or maintain communication. |
| **offline** | The condition of a modem that is not connected to another modem. |
| **on-hook** | The condition of a telephone or modem that is not being used. |
| **online** | The condition of a modem that is connected to and communicating with another modem. |

**Originate mode** The modem is in a state where it is ready to transmit a call. In a dial network, it is the modem that makes the call. In a leased-line network, it is one of two sides of the network that is selected to be the originating modem.

**parity** A way of checking data accuracy by counting the number of bits that have a value of one.

**PBX** Telephone switching equipment (Private Branch Exchange) dedicated to one customer. A PBX connects private telephones to each other and to the public dial network.

**permissive interface** A dial modem operating mode characterized by a fixed output power level of –9 dBm.

**physical address** The diagnostic address of a control modem derived from its location in the carrier: its carrier and slot number.

**power-up self-test** A test that checks most hardware components when the modem is powered-on.

**product code** A three-digit code indicating the modem's highest VF data rate.

**protocol** The rules for timing, format, error control, and flow control during data transmission.

**PSTN** Public Switched Telephone Network. A network shared among many users who can use telephones to establish connections between two points. Also known as dial network.

**pulse dialing** One of two dialing methods, in which telephone numbers are sent as pulses (brief changes in voltage or current intensity) across the telephone line. Rotary telephones use pulse dialing.

**register** A part of the modem's memory that contains values that determine the modem's operating characteristics.

**Remote** A branch of the Top-Level menu that permits access to the DCP of another modem.

**remote loopback** A test that sends a signal to the remote modem to test the local modem, the remote modem, and the circuit between them.

**remote mode indicator** An inverse video that indicates the modems are operating in Remote mode.

**result code** An asynchronous message (in either numbers or words) that the modem sends to the DTE after executing or trying to execute a command.

**Return to Dial** A function available when in Dial Backup mode that allows the modem to switch to dial-line operation when currently on leased lines.

**RJ11C** A type of 6-position jack normally used with permissive dial networks and telephone sets.

**RJ21X** A type of 50-position jack normally used with permissive dial networks providing the appropriate conductors for up to eight telephone lines.

**rotary** A TELCO service whereby multiple lines to a customer premise share a common telephone number.

**RS-232D** An Electronic Industries Association's standard defining the 25-position interface between data terminal equipment and data communications equipment.

| | |
|---|---|
| **SDCP** | Shared Diagnostic Control Panel. An optional user interface similar to the front panel of a 3810*Plus* modem that attaches to the front of a COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier. Installed at eye level into one COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier, it controls and monitors modems in all the carriers in the cabinet. A single SDCP can control up to 8 carriers, with a total of 128 modems. |
| **SDU** | Shared Diagnostic Unit. A circuit card installed in Slot 0 of the COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier that provides an interface between an optional SDCP and/or network management and 3811*Plus* modems. |
| **Select key** | An SDCP key that allows the selection of a specific card slot in the COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier. |
| **serial transmission** | A way of transmitting data in which bits are sent sequentially one at a time. |
| **Shared Diagnostic Unit (SDU)** | A circuit card that plugs into a dedicated slot in the COMSPHERE 3000 Series Carrier to provide the SDCP and network management interfaces to the dial modems in the carrier. It translates the network management protocol to the devices in the carrier and routes incoming messages to the appropriate slots. |
| **S-Registers** | Registers that contains information affecting the modem parameters. All S-Registers must be preceded by the AT prefix. |
| **Sync Dial** | A factory preset configuration area containing configuration options most often used in synchronous dial networks. |
| **synchronous transmission** | Data transmission that is synchronized by timing signals. Characters are sent at a fixed rate. This type of transmission is more efficient than asynchronous transmission. |
| **ter** | Latin for ‘‘thrice’’ Used to distinguish the third version of a standard from other versions; e.g., V.27 ter. |
| **terbo** | See V.32*terbo*. |
| **tone dialing** | One of two dialing methods, in which telephone numbers are sent as tones across the telephone lines. |
| **Top-Level menu** | The very top of the menu tree that displays modem status and all Top-Level menu branches. |
| **training** | A process where two modems try to establish a connection over the VF line. |
| **UL** | Underwriter’s Laboratories, Inc. |
| **UNIX Dial** | A factory preset configuration area containing the configuration options most often used in a UNIX® dial network. |
| **USOC** | Universal Service Ordering Codes. |
| **VF** | Voice Frequency. The part of the audio frequency range used to transmit voice sound (usually 300 Hz to 3400 Hz). This band is used by the modem for its modulated signal. |
| **V.17** | A fax communications standard for modems operating half-duplex with synchronous data at 14,400 bps. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **V.22** | A standard for modems operating full-duplex with asynchronous or synchronous data at 1200 bps over the dial network (PSTN). |
| **V.22bis** | A standard for modems operating full-duplex with asynchronous or synchronous data at 1200 or 2400 bps over the dial network (PSTN). |
| **V.27bis** | A communications standard for modems operating in synchronous mode at 4800 or 2400 bps. |
| **V.27ter** | A fax communications standard for modems operating half-duplex with synchronous data at 2400 and 4800 bps. |
| **V.29** | A communications standard for modems operating half-duplex with synchronous data at 7200 and 9600 bps. |
| **V.32** | A standard for modems operating full-duplex with asynchronous or synchronous data at 4800 or 9600 bps on switched (dial) or leased telephone lines. |
| **V.32bis** | A standard for modems operating full-duplex with asynchronous or synchronous data over dial networks (PSTN) or leased lines at 14,400, 12,000, 9600, 7200, or 4800 bps. |
| **V.32*terbo*** | A proprietary standard for modems operating full-duplex with asynchronous or synchronous data over dial networks (PSTN) or leased lines at 19,200 or 16,800 bps. The *terbo* is a pun on turbo and ter; the next iteration of the V.32 recommendation, had one been finalized, would have been V.32 ter. |
| **V.33** | A communications standard for modems operating half-duplex with synchronous data at 14,400 and 12,000 bps. |
| **V.34** | A standard for modems operating full-duplex with asynchronous or synchronous data over dial networks (PSTN) or two-wire leased lines at 28,800, 26,400, 24,000, 21,600, 19,200, 16,800, 14,400, 12,000, 9600, 7200, 4800, or 2400 bps. |
| **V.42** | CCITT standard for error control protocol. |
| **V.42bis** | CCITT standard for data compression. |
| **V.54** | CCITT standard for local and remote diagnostic loopback tests. |
| **XOFF** | A character that tells the DTE or modem to stop transmitting data. |
| **XON** | A character that tells the DTE or modem to start or resume transmitting data. |

# Index

## A


A/ (Repeat Last Command), 13-3
Abort (Test branch), 7-2
ac power
  connection, 2-5
  requirements, D-3
Access from Remote, 8-40
Active (Operating) configuration area, 8-1
Active (Saved) configuration area, 8-1
Administrative Password, 11-4, 11-10
Answer, 5-3
Answer Access security, 11-2
Answer Access Security Mode, 8-43
Answer Security, 11-8
any-key abort, 5-2, 13-3, 13-4
Asymmetric Rate Mode, 13-16
AT Command Mode, 8-17
AT commands
  ″H (V.42bis Compression), 8-32, 13-13
  &C (LSD Control), 8-12, 13-7
  &D (DTR Action), 8-9, 13-7
  &F (Factory Defaults), 13-8
  &G (V.22bis Guard Tone), 8-25, 13-8
  &I (Dial Transmit Level), 13-9
  &J (Dial Transmit Type), 8-25, 13-9
  &L (Leased Mode), 8-27, 13-9
  &M (Async/Sync Mode and DTE Dialer Type), 8-7, 8-14, 13-10
  &Q (Async/Sync Mode and DTE Dialer Type), 8-7, 8-14, 13-10
  &R (RTS Action), 8-11, 13-10
  &S (DSR Control), 8-10, 13-10
  &T (Test), 13-11
  &T0 (Abort Test), 7-2
  &T1 (Local Analog Loopback), 7-3
  &T2 (Pattern Test), 7-7
  &T3 (Local Digital Loopback), 7-5
  &T4, &T5 (Receive Remote Loopback Response), 8-37
  &T6 (Remote Digital Loopback), 7-4
  &T9 (Self-Test), 7-2
  &V (View Configuration Options), 13-11
  &W (Save to Memory), 13-11
  &X (Transmit Clock Source), 8-13, 13-11
  &Z (Store Telephone Numbers), 5-5, 13-11
  %A (Error Control Fallback Character), 8-33, 13-13
  %C (MNP5 Compression), 8-32, 13-13
  +FCLASS (Service Class Selection), 13-13
  \A (Maximum Frame Size), 8-35, 13-12
  \C (Error Control Negotiate Buffer), 8-32, 13-12
  \D (CTS Control), 8-11, 13-12
  \G (Modem-to-Modem Flow Control), 8-34, 13-12
  \K (Break Buffer Control, Send Break Control, Break Forces Escape), 8-15, 8-34, 8-35, 13-12
  \N (Error Control Mode), 8-31, 13-12
  \Q (Flow Control of DTE, Flow Control of Modem), 8-33, 13-13
  \T (No Data Disconnect Timer), 8-21, 13-13
  \X (XON/XOFF Passthrough), 8-34, 13-13
  A (Answer Mode), 5-3, 13-3
  D (Dial), 5-6, 13-3
  DS (Dial Stored Number), 5-2, 13-4
  E (Command Character Echo), 8-15, 13-4
  echo, C-2
  format, 13-2
  H (Hook Switch Control), 5-3, 13-4
  I (Identification), 6-3, 13-4
  L (Speaker Volume), 8-40, 13-5
  list of, 13-2
  M (Speaker Control), 8-39, 13-5
  O (Online mode), 13-5
  Q (Result Codes), 8-16, 13-5
  Sr? (Display S-Register Value), 13-5
  Sr=n (Change S-Register), 13-5
  using to change factory presets, 4-11
  V (Result Codes Format), 8-17, 13-5
  X (Extended Result Codes, Dial Tone Detect, Busy Tone Detect), 8-16, 8-19, 8-20, 13-6
  Y (Long Space Disconnect), 8-21, 13-6
  Z (Reset and Load Active), 13-6
AT Escape Character, 8-15
Auto Dial Standby, 8-30
Auto Redial, 8-30, 13-17
Auto-Answer Ring Count, 8-19
Automatic Firmware Download Center, 9-6
Automatic Make Busy, 8-21
automatic redialing, 8-18, 8-22, 8-30, 13-17
Automode (Dial Line), 8-24, 13-23
Autorate (Dial Line), 8-24, 13-23
Autorate (Leased Line), 8-28, 13-24

## B


Backspace Character, 8-16
Bad Lines Auto Originate, 8-29
Blind Dial Pause, 8-19
Break Buffer Control, 8-34
Break Forces Escape, 8-15
Busy Tone Detect, 8-20


## C


cables
  auxiliary, E-4
  crossover, E-4
Call Answer commands (V.25bis), F-3
Call Request commands (V.25bis), F-2
Call Setup branch, 5-1
Carriage Return Character, 8-15
Carrier On Level, 8-30
cellular, 13-8, 13-9
Cellular (Mobile), 8-41, 13-8
Cellular (PSTN), 13-8
Cellular Enhancement, 8-36
Cellular RJ11 Adapt, 8-41
Change Directory, 5-4
character format, 13-2, C-4
Choose Function, 8-4
Clone to Remote, 9-4
Command Character Echo, 8-15
command entry guidelines, 13-2
Command mode, 13-1
command responses (V.25bis), F-4
compression
  MNP5, 13-13
  V.42bis, 13-13
COMSPHERE 6700 Series NMS, 1-1
  connection, 2-5
configuration options, 8-7–8-43
  Dial Line, 8-23
  DTE Interface, 8-7
  editing and saving, 8-5
  error control, 8-31
  factory default, G-1
  for cellular, 13-8, 13-9
  Leased Line, 8-27
  Line Dialer, 8-19
  Miscellaneous, 8-39
  saving, 13-11
  Security, 8-42
  selecting, 4-11
  Tests, 8-37
  V.42/MNP/Buffer, 8-31
  viewing, 13-11
Configure branch, 8-4
connect messages, B-1
connection
  ac power, 2-5
  COMSPHERE 6700 Series NMS, 2-5
  dial-line, 2-4
  DTE, 2-3
  leased-line, 2-4, 2-5
Control branch, 9-1
CT111 Rate Control, 8-13, 13-21
CTS Control (\D), 8-11, 13-12
Customer configuration areas, 8-1


## D


D-Lead signaling, 8-22
Data Bits, 8-8
Data mode, 13-1
data rates supported, D-2
DCP (Diagnostic Control Panel), 2-1
  description, 4-1
  Hidden Choice Indicators, 4-4
  keypad, 4-5
  operation, 4-4
  security access, 4-13
  shared, 4-2
  types, 4-1
  using to change factory presets, 4-11
default configuration options, 4-11, G-1
  setting with AT commands, 4-11
  setting with DCP, 4-11
Dial, 5-2
dial backup, C-4
Dial Command modifiers, 13-3
  “!” (hook flash), 5-6
  “,” (pause), 5-6
  “;” (return to Command mode), 5-6
  P (Pulse dial), 5-6, 8-19, 13-3
  R (Reverse), 5-6
  T (Tone dial), 5-6, 8-19, 13-3
  W (Wait), 5-6
dial line connection, 2-4
Dial Line Rate, 8-23, 13-18
Dial Standby/Return to Dial, 5-3
Dial Tone Detect, 8-19
Dial Transmit Level (&I), 13-9
Dial Transmit Level Type (&J), 13-9
Dialer Type, 8-19
dimensions, D-3
Directory Location 1 Callback, 8-40
disabled commands, 8-39
Disconnect, 5-2
display configuration options (&V), 13-11
Download Code, 9-4
download failure, 9-6
download latest firmware, 9-6

DSR Control (&S), 8-10, 13-10
DTE connection, 2-3
DTE Dialer Type, 8-14
DTE Interface, 8-7, D-3
DTE LL (CT141), 13-20
DTE Local Loopback, 8-37
DTE Rate, 8-7
DTE Rate=VF Rate, 8-13
DTE rates supported, D-2
DTE Remote Loopback, 8-37
DTE RL (CT140), 13-20
DTE status, 6-4
DTE-side password
  backspace character, 8-43
  number of tries, 8-42
  termination character, 8-42
DTR Action (&D), 8-9, 13-7
DTR Alarm Reporting, 8-41, 13-23
DTR Auto Redial, 8-22
DTR Continuous Repeat, 8-18, 13-17

## E

Edit Password Table, 11-5
Edit Strap Group, 8-4
End (DCP option), 8-6
Enhanced Throughput Cellular (ETC), 8-25, 13-9
Entry Wait Time, 8-42
equipment
  customer-supplied, 2-2, 3-1
  in modem package, 2-1, 3-1
Erase All Passwords, 11-11
error codes (result codes), B-1
error control, 8-31
Error Control Fallback Character, 8-33
Error Control Mode (\N), 8-31, 13-12
Error Control Negotiate Buffer, 8-32
Escape Character, 8-15
Escape Guard Time, 8-15
escape sequence (+++), 13-1
Extended Result Codes, 8-16

## F

Factory configuration area, 8-1
factory default templates, 4-11, 8-1
Fall Forward Delay, 8-26, 8-30
Fast Disconnect, 8-20
fax
  +FCLASS command, 13-13
  modulations supported, D-2
  operation, 12-1
  types supported, 1-2, 12-1
features, 1-1
firmware download, 9-6
firmware release number, 13-4
firmware upgrade, 9-4, 9-6
flow control
  modem to modem, 13-12
  of modem and DTE, 8-33, 13-13
  XON/XOFF, 8-33, 13-13
Flow Control of DTE, 8-33
Flow Control of Modem, 8-33
Front Panel Security Access, 4-13

## G

Get_User_ID, 8-43

## H

heat dissipation, D-3
Hidden Choice Indicators, 4-4
hook flash (!), 13-3

## I

Identity, 6-3
installation
  carrier mount, 3-2
  standalone, 2-2

## K

keypad, 4-5

## L

LCD display, 4-4
LdEditAreafrm, 8-4
Leased Line mode, 13-9
Leased Line Rate, 8-28, 13-19
Leased Line Transmit Level, 8-29
Leased Mode, 8-27
leased-line connection, 2-4, 2-5
LEDs, 4-2
Line Dialer, 8-19
Linefeed Character, 8-16
Local Analog Loop, 7-3
Local Digital Loop, 7-5
locking the DCP, 4-13
Long Space Disconnect, 8-21
LSD Control, 8-12

# M

Make Busy, 9-3
Make Busy Via DTR, 8-22, 13-22
Maximum Frame Size, 8-35
menu tree, A-1
  overview, 4-6
  remote, 10-3
messages, 4-7
MI/MIC Dialing, 8-22
MNP5 Compression, 8-32
models, 1-2
  carrier-mounted, 3-1
  standalone, 2-1
Modem-to-Modem Flow Control, 8-34
Modulation (Dial Line configuration option), 8-23
Modulation (Leased Line configuration option), 8-27
modulations supported, D-2

# N

Network Management Address, 8-40
Network Position, 8-41
NMS Call Messages, 8-41
NMS DTR Alarm, 8-41
NMS_Reporting, 8-43
No Answer Timeout, 8-20
No Carrier Disconnect, 8-21
No Data Disconnect, 8-21
Nxt (DCP option), 8-6

# O

operating modes, 13-1
optional features, 1-2
Options (Status branch), 6-4
Originate Access security, 11-2
Originate Security, 8-43, 11-9

# P

Parity Bit, 8-8
password
  Administrative, 11-4, 11-10
  Answer Access, 11-11
  combination, 11-3
  database, 11-12
  DTE-side, 11-3
  entry, 11-11
  examples, 11-12
  number of DTE password tries, 8-42
  Originate Access, 11-12
  remote access, 8-40
  Table, 11-5
  VF-side, 11-2
Password Table, 11-5
Pattern (Test branch), 7-6
pause during dialing (,), 13-4
Pause Time (for "," dial modifier), 8-20
PBX, C-3
pin assignments
  EIA-232-D, E-2
  VF Connector, E-3
power consumption, D-3
power-up procedure, 2-6
primary channel, 10-2

# Q

quiet answer (@), 13-3

# R

Rate Auto Originate, 8-29
Receive Buffer Disconnect Delay, 8-35
Receive Remote Loopback, 8-37
Record (Status branch), 6-4
redialing, automatic, 8-18, 8-22, 8-30, 13-17
Remote Access Password, 8-40
Remote branch, 10-1
Remote Digital Loop, 7-4
Remote Mode Indicator, 4-5
remote modem Top-Level menu, 10-3
repeat last command (A/), 13-2, 13-3
replacing modems, 2-6, 3-2, 3-4
Reset, 9-2
Reset Security, 11-10
Result Codes
  enable/disable, 8-16, 13-5
  extended, 13-6
  format, 8-17, 13-5
result codes, B-1
return to command mode (;), 13-4
Reverse Dial mode (R), 13-3
RTS Action (&R), 8-11, 13-10
RTS/CTS Delay, 8-12, 13-16

# S

S-registers, 13-14
  changing, 13-5
  displaying, 13-5
  format, 13-14
  S0 (Auto-Answer Ring Number), 8-19, 13-14
  S2 (AT Escape Character), 8-15, 13-14
  S3 (Carriage Return Character), 8-15, 13-14
  S4 (Line Feed Character), 8-16, 13-15
  S5 (Backspace Character), 8-16, 13-15
  S6 (Blind Dial Pause), 8-19, 13-15
  S7 (No Answer Timeout), 8-20, 13-15
  S8 (“,” Pause Time), 8-20, 13-15
  S10 (No Carrier Disconnect), 8-21, 13-15
  S12 (Escape Guard Time), 8-15, 13-15
  S14 (Asymmetric Rate Mode), 13-16

S18 (Test Timeout), 8-37, 13-16
S26 (RTS/CTS Delay), 8-12, 13-16
S36 (Rate Auto Originate), 8-29, 13-16
S37 (Auto Redial), 8-22, 8-30, 13-17
S38 (DTR Continuous Repeat), 8-18, 13-17
S39 (Receive Buffer Disconnect Delay), 8-35, 13-17
S40 (Auto Make Busy), 8-21, 13-17
S41 (Dial Line Rate), 13-18
S43 (Train Time), 8-25, 13-18
S44 (Leased Line Rate), 8-23, 8-28, 13-19
S45 (Leased Line Transmit Level), 8-29, 13-19
S46 (Bad Lines Auto Originate), 8-29, 13-19
S47 (Auto Dial Standby), 8-30, 13-20
S48 (Leased-Line Carrier On Level), 8-30, 13-20
S49 (Transmit Buffer Disconnect Delay), 8-35, 13-20
S51 (DTE Remote Loopback), 8-37, 13-20
S52 (DTE Local Loopback), 8-37, 13-20
S53 (V.54 Address), 8-38, 13-21
S54 (V.54 Device Type), 13-21
S55 (Access from Remote), 8-40, 13-21
S56–S59 (Remote Access Password), 8-40, 13-21
S61 (CT111 Rate Control), 8-13, 13-21
S62 (V.25bis Coding), 8-17, 13-22
S63 (V.25bis Idle Character), 8-18, 13-22
S64 (V.25bis New Line Character), 8-18, 13-22
S66 (NMS Call Messages), 8-41, 13-22
S67 (Directory Location 1 Callback), 8-40, 13-22
S69 (Make Busy Via DTR), 8-22, 13-22
S74 (Network Position Identifier), 8-41, 13-23
S75 (Network Management Address), 8-40, 13-23
S76 (Autorate), 8-24, 13-23
S77 (DTR Alarm Reporting), 8-41, 13-23
S78 (Automode), 8-24, 13-23
S80 (No Data Disconnect Trigger Signal), 13-24
S82 (Autorate), 8-28, 13-24
S83 (MI/MIC Dialing), 8-22, 13-24
S84 (AT Command Mode), 8-17, 13-24
S85 (Fast Disconnect), 8-20, 13-24
S88 (Straps When Disconnected), 8-39, 13-25
S89 (V.42 ARQ Window Size Increase), 13-25
S90 (DTE Rate = VF Rate), 8-13, 13-25
S91 (Cellular Enhancements), 8-36, 13-25
S92 (V.29 Train On Data), 13-26
S93 (Cellular RJ11 Adapt), 8-41, 13-26
SDCP (Shared Diagnostic Control Panel), 3-1
SDU (Shared Diagnostic Unit), 3-1
secondary channel, 10-2
Security branch, 11-4
Security configuration options, 8-42
security messages, 4-7
Self (Test branch), 7-2
self-test, 7-2
Send Break Control, 8-35
serial number, 13-4
Service Line, 9-3
Set Access Control, 11-4
Set Administrative Password, 11-10
Set Answer Security, 11-8
Set Originate Security, 11-9
setting factory defaults, 4-11
Speaker Control, 8-39, 9-2
Speaker Volume, 8-40
status, 4-7
Status branch, 6-1
status indicators, 4-2
Stop Bits, 8-8
store telephone number (&Z), 13-11
Straps When Disconnected, 8-39

## T

technical specifications, D-1
telephone interface, D-3
telephone numbers, entering, 5-5
Test branch, 7-2
Test Timeout, 8-37
tests (&T), 13-11
top-level menu, 4-7
Train Time, 8-25
Transmit Buffer Disconnect Delay, 8-35
Transmit Clock Source, 8-13
transmit level, D-3
  dial, 13-9
  leased line, 13-19
troubleshooting, C-1

## U

UNIX, G-1, G-2
upgrade instructions, 9-6

# V

V.22bis Guard Tone, 8-25
V.25bis Coding, 8-17, 13-22
V.25bis commands, F-4
V.25bis dialing commands and responses, F-1
V.25bis Idle Character, 13-22
V.25bis Idle Fill, 8-18
V.25bis New Line Character, 8-18, 13-22
V.25bis response messages, F-5
V.29 Train On Data, 13-26
V.42 ARQ WIndow Size, 13-25
V.42bis Compression, 8-32
V.54 Address, 8-38, 13-21
V.54 Device Type, 8-38, 13-21
VF line requirements, D-3
VF Prompt Type, 8-42
VF rate, 13-18
VF rates supported, D-2
VF status, 6-2
view configuration options (&V), 13-11

# W

wait for dial tone (W or +), 13-3

# X

XON/XOFF Passthrough, 8-34